

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Discipleship for the Lord Jesus Christ

What kind of soil am I?

42Thru.com

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Copyright © 2026 by 42Thru.com

Published by 42Thru.com

All rights reserved. This book may be reproduced, or stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the express written permission of the publisher **provided it is done for not-for-profit purposes**. If you use some or all the content of this book, then please let me know at **42Thru.com**

Unless otherwise noted, Scripture quotations are from *The New American Standard Bible* (NASB). Scripture references are protected by copyright © 1986 La Habra, CA: The Lockman Foundation

Scripture quotations marked as KJV are from *The Holy Bible, King James Version*

Scripture quotations marked as NIV are from *The New International Version* by Zondervan copyright © 2011

In Scripture quotations, emphasis in boldface and/or yellow highlight were added by the author and were not part of the original translation.

ISBN: 978-1-990851-29-2 A Deeper Relationship with Jesus, Second Edition, English, Other digital (PDF)

ISBN: 978-1-990851-30-8 A Deeper Relationship with Jesus, Second Edition, English, Paperback

ISBN: 978-1-990851-31-5 A Deeper Relationship with Jesus, Second Edition, English, Electronic book

The Kindle eBook is available at <https://www.amazon.com/>

The FREE PDF file is available at **42Thru.com**

Cover Design by: 42Thru.com

Interior Design by: 42Thru.com

Second Edition (Contains an expanded Chapter 5 as well as a few small corrections to typos)

To my heavenly Father: Thank you for convicting me of my sins and teaching me through your Holy Spirit; You led me to salvation in Jesus Christ, God the Son. Thank you, God, for taking on human flesh and paying for my sins to thereby save me from an eternity in the Lake of Fire.

To my earthly father: "Pa". You demonstrated unconditional self-sacrificial love before I even learned about Jesus Christ's unconditional self-sacrificial love for me.

Epigraph

"I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21
"I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness comes through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."
Galatians 2:20-21

The apostle Paul

Preface

If you are seeking a deeper relationship with Jesus Christ, then God will reward you.

Hebrews 11:6 And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God must believe that He is and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.

A very effective way to deepen your relationship with someone is to learn as much as you can about them and their values, what they hold as the most important priorities in their life. The subtitle of this book is *Discipleship for the Lord Jesus Christ*. You will deepen your relationship with Jesus by being discipled for Him. The Holy Spirit will reward you for reading this book and applying it to your life. 42Thru is an easy way to remember why Jesus died for you and what His desire is for your life's purpose.

Many years ago, as a new Christian, I asked a mature Christian which books he recommends; I am very glad I asked Tom because he told me about *The Master Plan of Evangelism* by Robert E. Coleman

<https://www.amazon.com/Master-Plan-Evangelism-Robert-Coleman/dp/0800788087/>

Robert Coleman's book clearly explains Jesus Christ's method to save as many people as possible; that book inspired me to write this book. The contents of this book were inspired by God the Holy Spirit.

Originally, I developed about half of the contents of this book while discipling a group of men. The Lord also inspired me to add additional content after discipling Ebby, a wonderful faithful woman in Nairobi, Kenya. She in-turn discipled a church group of 22 men and women in Nairobi.

This book is part of my contribution to the Great Commission:

Matthew 28:18–20 And Jesus came up and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. "Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

Table of Contents

<i>Chapter 1: Introduction</i>	8
<i>Chapter 2: Christianity Is Not A Religion</i>	13
<i>Chapter 3: How To Get Into Heaven</i>	16
<i>Chapter 4: How Not To Get Into Heaven</i>	18
<i>Chapter 5: Bible Overview</i>	19
<i>Chapter 6: Man Created And Fallen</i>	23
<i>Chapter 7: What Does Born-Again Mean?</i>	26
<i>Chapter 8: The Exchanged Life -- 42Thru</i>	27
<i>Chapter 9: The Exchanged Life -- Key Verses</i>	28
<i>Chapter 10: What Does It Mean To Be A Christian?</i>	29
<i>Chapter 11: The Non-Christian And The Christian</i>	30
<i>Chapter 12: Jesus Christ Claimed To Be God</i>	31
<i>Chapter 13: Was Jesus Christ A Liar?</i>	51
<i>Chapter 14: What Is the Meat Of The Word?</i>	52
<i>Chapter 15: Law And Grace</i>	53
<i>Chapter 16: Rest From Your Works</i>	60
<i>Chapter 17: Christians Are No Longer Under The Law</i>	61
<i>Chapter 18: Are You As Righteous As Jesus Christ?</i>	62
<i>Chapter 19: Grace Is Not A License To Sin</i>	64
<i>Chapter 20: Legalism - - Do Not Mix Law And Grace</i>	65
<i>Chapter 21: How To Walk In The Spirit</i>	73
<i>Chapter 22: Obedience God's Way Not Our Way</i>	78
<i>Chapter 23: Natural Man, Carnal Man, And Spiritual Man</i>	79
<i>Chapter 24: The Scriptures</i>	80
<i>Chapter 25: Indwelling Father, Son, And Holy Spirit</i>	82
<i>Chapter 26: Angels, Fallen And Not Fallen</i>	84
<i>Chapter 27: The First Advent</i>	89
<i>Chapter 28: Salvation Only Through Jesus Christ</i>	92
<i>Chapter 29: Sanctification</i>	96
<i>Chapter 30: The Ordinances</i>	98
<i>Chapter 31: Rewards</i>	99
<i>Chapter 32: The Eternal State</i>	100
<i>Chapter 33: Evangelism</i>	102
<i>Chapter 34: Godhead (Trinity)</i>	103
<i>Chapter 35: A Trinity Analogy</i>	104
<i>Chapter 36: Memorize The Names Of The Books Of The New Testament</i>	106
<i>Chapter 37: Memorize The Names Of The Books Of The Old Testament</i>	111
<i>Chapter 38: Memorize The Attributes Of God</i>	112
<i>Chapter 39: Evil And Human Suffering</i>	122
<i>Chapter 40: The Greatest Act Of Love</i>	135

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

<i>Chapter 41: Heaven Is Real</i>	136
<i>Chapter 42: Hell Is Real</i>	139
<i>Chapter 43: What Happens When You Die?</i>	161
<i>Chapter 44: What You Need To Know On Your Deathbed</i>	162
<i>Chapter 45: Find Out Now If You Will Go To Heaven Or Hell</i>	163
<i>Chapter 46: Should A Christian Ask For Forgiveness?</i>	164
<i>Chapter 47: What About 1 John 1:9?</i>	166
<i>Chapter 48: The Lord's Prayer</i>	168
<i>Chapter 49: A Few Thoughts Regarding Faith In God</i>	169
<i>Chapter 50: What Does It Mean To Pray In The Name of Jesus?</i>	170
<i>Chapter 51: Essential Christian Doctrines</i>	171
<i>Chapter 52: Cults And Religions</i>	174
<i>Chapter 53: What About Those Who Have Never Heard Of Jesus?</i>	175
<i>Chapter 54: Can A Christian Lose Their Salvation?</i>	176
<i>Chapter 55: Why A Christian Cannot Lose Their Salvation</i>	177
<i>Chapter 56: Discipleship To Achieve The Great Commission</i>	183
<i>Chapter 57: God Spoke To Me</i>	186
<i>Chapter 58: Recommended Bible Study</i>	188
<i>Chapter 59: Free Bible In Your Language</i>	190
<i>Chapter 60: A Somber Warning</i>	191
<i>Chapter 61: My Prayer For Your Life</i>	193
<i>Chapter 62: Conclusion</i>	194
<i>Chapter 63: Copyrights</i>	196
<i>Glossary</i>	197

Chapter 1: Introduction

Hebrews 11:6 And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God must believe that He is and that **He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.**

If you are seeking a deeper relationship with Jesus Christ then God will reward you. Who will teach you? Only God the Holy Spirit can unlock the true meaning of His Word. When you seek to deepen your relationship with Him, He will unlock the true meaning of His Word to you. Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh, said the following Himself:

John 14:26 "But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all that I said to you.

Do you want a deeper relationship with Jesus Christ? If you answer that question with yes, then this book is for you, and I believe the Holy Spirit has made this content available to you because of your faithfulness to seek a deeper relationship with Him. As Christians we will deepen our relationship with Jesus Christ for all eternity, but we do not have to wait for eternity to get started. You can start to deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ now by reading this book.

An effective way to deepen your relationship with someone is to learn as much as you can about them and their values, what they hold as the most important priorities in their life. The subtitle of this book is *Discipleship for the Lord Jesus Christ*. You will quickly deepen your relationship with Jesus by being disciplined for Him. The Holy Spirit will reward you for reading this book and applying it to your life.

Once you have completed the book, my hope is that the Holy Spirit will inspire you to disciple other people for the Lord Jesus Christ using this content. You can help others deepen their relationship with Jesus Christ.

The purpose of this content is to inform a variety of readers:

1. A person who sincerely desires to know the one true God: This document will share the good news of Jesus Christ including how to get into heaven.
2. A new Christian: This document will disciple you for the Lord Jesus Christ.
3. A Christian who desires to have a deeper relationship with Jesus Christ: This document will help you walk in the Spirit also known as being led by the Spirit; both of which mean: how to let Jesus Christ live through you to accomplish the will of God the Father.
4. A Christian Bible study teacher: This document will help you disciple a group of people for the Lord Jesus Christ.
5. A terminally ill person who is in the process of accepting their death and desires to come to terms with their Creator: This document will address the big questions of evil, human suffering, death and life after death.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

6. An atheist or agnostic who sincerely wants to learn about true Christianity.

7. A Christian who desires to contribute to the fulfillment of the great commission: This document will help you let Jesus Christ live through you to accomplish the will of God the Father and contribute to the fulfillment of the great commission.

It is my sincere hope and prayer that this book will deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh. If you learn more about the love Jesus has for you then you will walk in the Spirit and when you do that you will be obedient; you will fulfill God's purpose for your life. You will be able to let Jesus Christ live through you to accomplish His good works through you; you will be able to let Him disciple other people through you.

Christianity is not a religion it is a relationship. This book explains what a religion is and why Christianity is NOT a religion.

This book explains how to get into heaven as well as how not to get into heaven. Many people hold beliefs about how to get into heaven, but those beliefs are not taught in the Bible.

A simple Bible overview provides you with a useful roadmap to the major parts of the Bible. The Bible contains 66 separate books, and they can be organized into just a few major sections which will immediately help you grasp the overall structure of the Bible.

Adam and Eve were created in God's image, they were spiritually alive but then they were disobedient to God and God's Holy Spirit departed from within them. As a result, all descendants of Adam and Eve are born spiritually dead and separated from God. To be reconciled to God, people must be born-again. This book addresses the question: What does born-again mean? Many people have heard the term but do not know what it means.

The term "Exchanged Life" encapsulates exactly what it means to be a Christian. The Non-Christian and the Christian are contrasted. Some people mistakenly think they are a Christian when they are not actually a Christian.

Many people are not aware of the many times Jesus Christ claimed to be God in human flesh. Those same people do not realize they are responsible for their response to Jesus Christ's claim to be God. This book explains the only possible responses to Jesus Christ's claims.

Many people say they like to get into the "meat" of the word. But when I ask people what exactly they mean when they say that they often say they simply mean they like to get into the deeper meaning of the word. But the Bible has a more specific meaning for the "meat" of the word or the "solid food". People have told me when I explain to them what the "meat" of the word means they say to me: "It is like being born-again, again. To determine if they truly understand what the meat of the word is I ask them the question: Are you as righteous as Jesus Christ? Learning the correct answer to that question will truly deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ. In fact, you may be surprised by the correct answer.

Law and Grace also known as the Old Covenant and the New Covenant is central to Christianity. Some people misunderstand the message of God's grace. Those who truly understand God's grace understand that grace is not a license to sin. Many of those who DO NOT understand the message of God's grace mistakenly think grace is a license to sin.

God wants you to rest from your works because He has done the work for you. You merely need to trust in the finished work of Jesus Christ. Christians are no longer under the Law.

This book addresses what it means to walk in the Spirit and how to obey God His way not our way.

This book provides Bible verses which show we are indwelt by the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.

We inhabit a fallen creation inhabited with human beings and angels both fallen and unfallen. This book provides many Bible verses which mention angels both fallen and unfallen.

A proper understanding of the First Advent, when Jesus Christ was born, is critical to understanding God's plan for your life.

Christianity is an exclusive faith. Salvation is only through Jesus Christ; there is no other way to be reconciled to God the Father.

Once a person becomes a true born-again Christian they must be sanctified. Sanctification, means being set apart unto God.

Water baptism and the Lord's Supper are the only ordinances of the Christian church to be performed purely as a testimony of Jesus Christ.

Christians will be given rewards after they die physically. This book looks at those rewards.

What happens after we die physically? This book gets into that topic.

All Christians need to be involved in evangelism it is a key part of the great commission. This book looks at a very effective approach to sharing the gospel of Jesus Christ.

The Godhead also known as the Trinity is a difficult concept for many people. Many analogies have been offered to help us understand the Trinity; this book offers one which shows how one can be perceived as three but, is one.

This book explains an easy and fun way to memorize the 66 names of the books of the Bible, in order. In fact, you will learn the names so well you could even name the books in reverse order, or I could give you the name of a book and you could instantly tell me the name of the book which appears before it and after it.

A great way to deepen your relationship with God is to learn more about the One True God. This book teaches you how to easily memorize the attributes of God. You can then meditate on His attributes anytime throughout the day.

One of the most common topics is evil and human suffering. It is reasonable to ask if God is good then why is there evil and human suffering. This book addresses that question. You will learn that God is indeed good and that He is doing something about evil. It is only through this evil, fallen, world that we have the opportunity to exercise free will and accept the gift of salvation through Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh. It is only because God is infinite eternal love and justice that the opportunity to experience an eternal loving relationship with Him is made possible.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

The greatest act of love in all of human history is precisely something which humankind would never have guessed beforehand. Once you understand the greatest act of love, I am confident you will have a deeper relationship with Jesus Christ.

What does the Bible say about heaven and hell? This book takes a look at what the Word of God says about both.

What happens when you die? There are only two answers to the question; the one you will face depends entirely on what you believe before your death. What you need to know on your deathbed is really very simple. If you find yourself on your deathbed, then this book will tell you the truth you need to know so that before your death you can make an informed decision. This book will help you determine if you will go to heaven or hell when you die. One simple question will tell you where you will go when you die.

Should a Christian ask for forgiveness? Many people have been taught to “keep short accounts with God” -- but is that actually true? This book will answer both of those questions. There is something I call the choke-test. Once you have received God’s forgiveness in Jesus Christ why would you keep asking for forgiveness?

Many people think if you don’t say “in the name of Jesus” at the end of a prayer then the pray is not valid. Ending a prayer with the phrase "In the name of Jesus. Amen," is never done in the New Testament. This book explains what is really meant by the phrase “in the name of Jesus”.

This book looks at a few points regarding what true faith in God really means.

This book provides a list of essential Christian doctrines. Every Christian needs to know what they believe and why they believe it.

Cults often want to portray themselves as Christian but when you evaluate their doctrines, they are obviously non-Christian. This book will help you learn how to evaluate an organization’s teaching in relation to Jesus Christ and determine if its followers are Christians or non-Christians. As well, you will learn if an organization is truly Christian or if it is instead a religion.

When people understand the true exclusive claim of Christianity they often respond with the question: If Jesus is the only way to salvation, then what happens to those who have never heard of Jesus? This book addresses that question.

The shortest chapter of this book is titled: Can A Christian Lose Their Salvation? If a person believes they can lose their salvation, then they do not understand what true salvation is and how it is taught in the Bible.

What system did Jesus Christ put in place to spread the gospel to the world? He did not start a political party; He did not invent a magical product; He did not develop a series of programs to get people involved in a bunch of busy work that keeps them from a deeper relationship with Him. This chapter explains what Jesus Christ did do to spread the gospel to the entire world.

God spoke to me; He told me two words which changed my life for eternity. I'd like to share those words in the form of my testimony; it will explain how I became a born-again Christian in a nano second.

After you have completed this book, you may be interested in additional Bible study materials. So, I share a short list of some teachers and materials that the Holy Spirit will use to bless you and continue to deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ.

There is a great free online resource available to give you access to the Bible in your own language.

Did you know that Jesus Christ gave people a somber warning? He said in:

Matthew 7:21 "Not everyone who says to Me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven".

If you have never heard of that warning, then you should consider it and evaluate your own beliefs. Elsewhere, the Bible clearly warns:

2 Timothy 3:5 holding to a form of godliness, although they have denied its power; Avoid such men as these.

This book provides guidance on applying those warnings to you and your beliefs.

After you have completed this book, I have a specific prayer for your life. It is the same prayer the apostle Paul prayed for his disciples.

This book contains biblical truth which will deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ. The best part is, the more you let God's word bless you the more it will bless you. If you incorporate the biblical truth contained within this book into your life, then the Lord God will teach you even more truth to set you free.

Nothing would make me happier than to hear that you took this content and used it to lead people to salvation in the Lord Jesus Christ or to disciple them for the Lord Jesus Christ. If that is the case, then please contact me at 42Thru.com

Chapter 2: Christianity Is Not A Religion

What is Christianity? Christianity is not a religion; it is a relationship. There are at least two things about Christianity I know of which are counter-intuitive: 1) God taking on human flesh in order to make human beings acceptable to Him and 2) Most people will say *seeing is believing* when they are confronted with a hard to believe proposition; but, in the case of Christianity, *believing is seeing*.

A Christian is not defined as being someone who does not smoke, drink alcohol, or go with women who do those things. If that were the definition of a Christian then my dog is a Christian because he doesn't smoke, drink alcohol, or go with women who do those things.

A religion is something which is works-based. Meaning, if you follow a set of laws or rules then you will make yourself acceptable to God. A religion says your works can make you acceptable to God.

Christianity is not works-based. Christianity says God made people acceptable to Him through the death of God the Son on the cross and through the resurrection of Jesus, God the Son; He gives eternal life to all who trust in the work of Jesus instead of their own works.

Christianity is not a religion; it is a relationship with Jesus Christ. If you repent of your sins and trust in Jesus Christ alone for your salvation, and not in your own works, then God gives you eternal life.

One of the reasons I believe the gospel of Jesus Christ is true is because **it is exactly what man would not have invented himself**. People like being given a list of things to do to show others they are faithful, to give an outward appearance of being faithful, and to help comfort themselves that God accepts them if they follow those laws or rules. But Christianity clearly teaches it is **not a result of your works**:

Ephesians 2:8–9 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, *it is* the gift of God; 9 **not as a result of works**, so that no one may boast.

The Sin of Adam and Eve

The sin of Adam and Eve was a lack of faith; they lacked faith in God and what He said to them. The sin was when Adam and Eve chose, by their free will, not to believe what God warned them about; they chose to do exactly what He said they should not do. In that day they did die; they died spiritually, not physically. God withdrew His Spirit from within them. From that point, when they had children, their children were born in the image of Adam, spiritually dead, as mentioned in Genesis 5:3–5 (see also the other verses below):

Genesis 1:26–27 Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the cattle and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."
27 God created man in His own image, in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them.

Genesis 2:16–17 The LORD God commanded the man, saying, “From any tree of the garden you may eat freely; 17 but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you will surely die.”

Genesis 3:1–7 Now the serpent was more crafty than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said to the woman, “Indeed, has God said, ‘You shall not eat from any tree of the garden?’” 2 The woman said to the serpent, “From the fruit of the trees of the garden we may eat; 3 but from the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of the garden, God has said, ‘You shall not eat from it or touch it, or you will die.’ ” 4 The serpent said to the woman, “You surely will not die! 5 “For God knows that in the day you eat from it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.” 6 When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make *one* wise, she took from its fruit and ate; and she gave also to her husband with her, and he ate. 7 Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves loin coverings.

Genesis 5:3–5 When Adam had lived one hundred and thirty years, he became the father of *a son* in his own likeness, **according to his image**, and named him Seth. 4 Then the days of Adam after he became the father of Seth were eight hundred years, and he had *other* sons and daughters. 5 So all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years, and he died.

Romans 5:14–21 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those who had not sinned in the likeness of the offense of Adam, who is a type of Him who was to come. 15 But the free gift is not like the transgression. For if by the transgression of the one the many died, much more did the grace of God and the gift by the grace of the one Man, Jesus Christ, abound to the many. 16 The gift is not like *that which came* through the one who sinned; for on the one hand the judgment *arose* from one *transgression* resulting in condemnation, but on the other hand the free gift *arose* from many transgressions resulting in justification. 17 **For if by the transgression of the one, death reigned through the one, much more those who receive the abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness will reign in life through the One, Jesus Christ.** 18 So then as through one transgression there resulted condemnation to all men, even so through one act of righteousness there resulted justification of life to all men. 19 For as through the one man’s disobedience the many were made sinners, even so through the obedience of the One the many will be made righteous. 20 The Law came in so that the transgression would increase; but where sin increased, grace abounded all the more, 21 so that, as sin reigned in death, even so grace would reign through righteousness to eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

Jesus **could not have a human father** otherwise He would have been born in Adam’s image, spiritually dead:

Matthew 1:18 Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follows: when His mother Mary had been betrothed to Joseph, before they came together **she was found to be with child by the Holy Spirit.**

Romans 14:23 But he who doubts is condemned if he eats, because *his eating is* not from faith; and **whatever is not from faith is sin.**

New creation in Jesus Christ:

2 Corinthians 5:17 Therefore if anyone is in Christ, *he is a new creature*; the old things passed away; behold, new things have come.

The whole gospel

Before salvation, we faced two problems, we were:

1. alienated from God
2. dead in our sins (we were born spiritually dead)

There are two parts to salvation:

1. reconciliation with God through the death of Christ
2. being made spiritually alive through the life of Christ

Romans 5:10 For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God through the death of His Son, much more, having been reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.

John 5:24 "Truly, truly, I say to you, he who hears My word, and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life, and does not come into judgment, but has passed out of death into life.

John 3:16–18 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 "For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 "He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

What is salvation? See verse 5, being made alive with Christ:

Ephesians 2:5–9 even when we were dead in our transgressions, *made us alive together with Christ* (by grace you have been saved), 6 and raised us up with Him, and seated us with Him in the heavenly *places* in Christ Jesus, 7 so that in the ages to come He might show the surpassing riches of His grace in kindness toward us in Christ Jesus. 8 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, *it is* the gift of God; 9 not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.

Galatians 2:20–21 "I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the *life* which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 "I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness *comes* through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."

Chapter 3: How To Get Into Heaven

How to Get into Heaven or the ABCs of salvation

A. Admit you are a sinner and repent of your sins.

Romans 3:23 for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God,

Luke 13:5 "I tell you, no, but unless you repent, you will all likewise perish."

Please note that you do not need to "clean up" your life before you can be saved; you merely need to repent and believe to be saved. Repent means to turn away from your sinful life. Believe means to believe that the Lord Jesus died to pay for your sins.

Mark 1:15 and saying, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel."

2 Peter 3:9 The Lord is not slow about His promise, as some count slowness, but is patient toward you, not wishing for any to perish but for all to come to repentance.

B. Believe Jesus is God in human flesh and believe salvation is only available through Jesus Christ.

John 10:30 "I and the Father are one."

John 14:6 Jesus *said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me.

John 3:16–18 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 "For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 "He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

1 John 1:7 but if we walk in the Light as He Himself is in the Light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus His Son cleanses us from all sin.

C. Confess that you accept Jesus Christ as your personal Lord and Savior

Romans 10:9–10 that if you confess with your mouth Jesus as Lord, and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved; 10 for with the heart a person believes, resulting in righteousness, and with the mouth he confesses, resulting in salvation.

After you read steps A, B, and C above, then you should pray the following prayer:

Lord Jesus Christ,

I admit that I am a sinner and I repent of my sins.

I believe that you are God in human flesh and that your death on the cross paid for all my sins: past, present, and future.

I believe that the forgiveness of sins and eternal life (salvation) are only available through your finished work on the cross.

I accept you, Jesus Christ, as my personal Lord and Savior.

I suggest that you write down the date and time that you said the above prayer because in coming years you will want to know the day you became a born-again Christian.

Understand what has just happened to you.

Ephesians 2:8–9 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, *it is* the gift of God; 9 not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.

1 John 5:11–12 And the testimony is this, that God has given us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. 12 He who has the Son has the life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have the life.

2 Corinthians 5:17 Therefore if anyone is in Christ, *he is* a new creature; the old things passed away; behold, new things have come.

John 3:3–5 Jesus answered and said to him, **“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God.”** 4 Nicodemus *said to Him, “How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother’s womb and be born, can he?” 5 Jesus answered, **“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.**

Chapter 4: How Not To Get Into Heaven

Are you a good person? Are you truly saved? In other words, will you go to heaven instead of hell? Have you been **saved** from going to hell? The approach used in this chapter is based on the approach used by the Living Waters ministry. To help you learn how to share the gospel with people, which is what evangelism means, I recommend the excellent material available at:

<https://www.livingwaters.com/>

Some people believe they will go to heaven because they feel they are a good person. If that describes you, then please answer the following questions to put that to the test.

1. Have you ever lied? Even a little white lie.
2. What do you call a person who tells lies? Answer: A liar.
3. Have you ever stolen anything? No matter how small?
4. What do you call someone who steals? Answer: A thief.
5. Have you ever used God's name in vain? Blasphemy, which means, using God's name to curse.
6. Have you ever committed adultery? That means, sex with someone's else's spouse.
7. Have you ever had sex outside of marriage? Sex outside of marriage is called fornication.

In Matthew 5:28 Jesus said:

Matthew 5:28 but I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.

So, if you answered yes to one or more of the above questions then you are not a good person; and that is just four of the ten commandments. If you answered yes to all the above questions, then you are not a good person. Here is a true evaluation of you: By your own admission, you are a lying thief, a blasphemer, a fornicator and an adulterer at heart.

Here is some more truth for you:

1 Corinthians 6:9-10 Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived; neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor homosexuals, 10 nor thieves, nor *the* covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor swindlers, will inherit the kingdom of God.

It is at this point that many people ask: Who then can be saved? Well, the very next verse after the passage I just quoted above provides the answer to you:

1 Corinthians 6:11 Such were some of you; but you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were **justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and in the Spirit of our God.**

Simply put, if you are willing to repent of your sins and to trust only in what Jesus Christ did on the cross to pay for your sins then God will give you eternal life and you will go to heaven when you die. If you do not do that then you will go to hell when you die.

Chapter 5: Bible Overview

Preparation	Manifestation	Propagation	Explanation	Consummation
Entire Old Testament	Gospels	Acts	Epistles	Revelation
Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, Ruth, 1 Samuel, 2 Samuel 1 Kings, 2 Kings, 1 Chronicles, 2 Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah, Esther, Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Songs, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Lamentations, Ezekiel, Daniel, Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah Jonah, Micah, Nahum Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi	Matthew Mark Luke John	Acts	Romans 1 Corinthians 2 Corinthians Galatians Ephesians Philippians Colossians 1 Thessalonians 2 Thessalonians 1 Timothy 2 Timothy Titus Philemon Hebrews James 1 Peter 2 Peter 1 John 2 John 3 John Jude	Revelation

The purpose of the entire Bible is to lead people to salvation in Jesus Christ.

The entire Old Testament points us to Jesus Christ; who said Himself:

John 5:39–40 “You search the Scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life; it is **these that testify about Me**; 40 and you are unwilling to come to Me so that you may have life.

The purpose of the Law in the Old Testament is specifically given to lead us to Jesus:

Galatians 3:24 Therefore the Law has become our tutor **to lead us to Christ**, so that we may be justified by faith.

Romans 6:14 **For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law but under grace.**

Romans 10:4 **For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes.**

The first table conveys that many verses from ANY book of the Old Testament point to Christ; we find news of the manifestation of Christ most predominantly in the Gospels. There are many Old Testament books referenced in Matthew, many referenced in Mark, many in Luke and many in the Gospel of John. Then we find the record of the propagation (spread) of the gospel to all the nations most predominantly in the book of Acts. We can read the Epistles to gain a deeper understanding of what was prophesied in the Old Testament and proclaimed as having happened in the Gospels and was being spread to all the nations in the book of Acts. To help us better understand the meaning of the manifestation of Jesus and the Holy Spirit as proclaimed in the Gospels, just one of many possible examples in the Epistles tells us:

Galatians 5:18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law.

The above verse is just one example, ANY of the Epistles provide a deeper understanding of the significance of God manifesting in human flesh as proclaimed in the Gospels. Finally, we find out how God's wise plan comes to a climax or consummation, in the book of Revelation. Many of the other books of the Bible in both the Old and New Testaments point to the book of Revelation; for example, Daniel and Ezekiel in the Old Testament point to the book of Revelation in many ways.

The second table shows an example of how the crucifixion of Jesus was prophesied in the Old Testament in Psalms and Genesis, proclaimed as having happened in the Gospels, how that was propagated to all the nations, how we get a deeper understanding of what the crucifixion means in the Epistles, just one of many possible examples is 1 Corinthians 1:23, and finally, in the book of Revelation, we see the consummation of the crucifixion as Jesus returns to judge the unfaithful, including those who pierced Him (crucified Him). So, in the second and third tables I provide just a few of many possible examples of how you can trace a theme horizontally all the way through the Bible to gain a better understanding of God's wise and beautiful plan for humanity.

God has infinite wisdom. He has a wise plan which covers the beginning, middle, and end of everything. God's word, the Bible, lays out his wise plan. All of the pieces of his plan are like the pieces of a jigsaw puzzle or a beautiful mosaic.

In the Old Testament, God promised to defeat eternal death; in the New Testament, he explained how he did it through the sinless life, sacrificial death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh.

The entire Old Testament prepares us for the coming of Jesus Christ. Jesus himself said:

John 5:39-40 "You search the Scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life; it is these that testify about Me; 40 and you are unwilling to come to Me so that you may have life.

The Gospels tell us God the Son was manifest in the flesh as Jesus Christ.

The book of Acts tells us how the good news of the sinless life, sacrificial death and resurrection of Jesus Christ, which is what "gospel" means, was taken to all nations.

The epistles, which simply means the letters, give us a deeper explanation of what was accomplished through the manifestation of God in human flesh.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

The book of Revelation, and yes it is the book of Revelation (singular) and not the book of Revelations (plural), tells us about the consummation of history; it tells us where the faithful who trust in Jesus Christ's work go for eternity (New Heaven and New Earth) and where the unfaithful who trust in their own works go (Lake of Fire).

The following tables, just a small sample of verses, show how the Bible lays out God's wise plan for humanity. There are many more examples but, hopefully, this will encourage you to see how each of the sections of the Bible fit together to accomplish God's purpose for your eternal life through the work of Jesus and not through your own works.

← Old Testament	New Testament →			
Preparation	Manifestation	Propagation	Explanation	Consummation
Entire Old Testament	Gospels	Acts	Epistles	Revelation
<p>They pierced my hands and my feet. Psalm 22:16.</p> <p>He shall bruise you on the head, And you shall bruise him on the heel. Genesis 3:15 -- this points forward to Christ's death where Christ injured Satan's head (fatally defeated eternal death) and Satan "bruised" Christ's heel, when Christ died physically.</p>	<p>Christ's hands and feet were nailed (pierced) to the cross thus fulfilling Psalm 22:16.</p> <p>Christ's sacrificial death on the cross defeated eternal death.</p>	<p>"Therefore let all the house of Israel know for certain that God has made Him both Lord and Christ—this Jesus whom you crucified." Acts 2:36</p> <p>Peter took the gospel to the Jews. Paul took the gospel to the Gentiles.</p>	<p>knowing this, that our old self was crucified with Him, in order that our body of sin might be done away with, so that we would no longer be slaves to sin; Romans 6:6 but we preach Christ , to Jews a stumbling block and to Gentiles foolishness, 1 Corinthians 1:23</p>	<p>BEHOLD, HE IS COMING WITH THE CLOUDS, and every eye will see Him, even those who pierced Him; and all the tribes of the earth will mourn over Him. So it is to be. Amen. Revelation 1:7</p>
<p>One part of the Law specifies a lamb sacrifice to cover sins -- this points forward to Christ's sacrificial death on the cross to take away the sin of the world.</p> <p>One part of the Law specifies the keeping of the sabbath: Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days you shall labor and do all your work, but the seventh day is a sabbath of the LORD your God; in it you shall not do any work Exodus 20:8-10 -- this points forward to the New Testament, e.g., Galatians and Hebrews, where born again believers are no longer under the Law; they can rest from their works which they mistakenly believed would make themselves acceptable to God.</p>	<p>"You search the Scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life; it is these that testify about Me; and you are unwilling to come to Me so that you may have life. John 5:39-40</p> <p>Behold, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world! John 1:29</p> <p>Therefore they said to Him, "What shall we do, so that we may work the works of God?" Jesus answered and said to them, "This is the work of God, that you believe in Him whom He has sent:" John 6:28-29 -- this passage clearly shows Christ explaining that you cannot do good works to earn your salvation; instead, you must believe in Christ's fulfillment of the Law and sacrificial death and His resurrection to receive eternal life.</p>	<p>Salvation is through faith not through the Law: and through Him everyone who believes is freed from all things, from which you could not be freed through the Law of Moses. Acts 13:39</p> <p>When they had set a day for Paul, they came to him at his lodging in large numbers; and he was explaining to them by solemnly testifying about the kingdom of God and trying to persuade them concerning Jesus, from both the Law of Moses and from the Prophets, from morning until evening. Acts 28:23</p>	<p>The purpose of the Law is to lead us to Christ: Therefore the Law has become our tutor to lead us to Christ, so that we may be justified by faith. Galatians 3:24</p> <p>For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes. Romans 10:4</p> <p>Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now being perfected by the flesh? Galatians 3:3</p> <p>For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law but under grace. Romans 6:14</p> <p>But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law. Galatians 5:18</p> <p>Rest from your works: So there remains a Sabbath rest for the people of God. For the one who has entered His rest has himself also rested from his works, as God did from His. Hebrews 4:9-10</p>	<p>And every created thing which is in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea, and all things in them, I heard saying, "To Him who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb, be blessing and honor and glory and dominion forever and ever." Revelation 5:13</p> <p>and from Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To Him who loves us and released us from our sins by His blood— Revelation 1:5</p> <p>-- His blood refers to His sacrificial death as the Lamb of God</p>



Preparation	Manifestation	Propagation	Explanation	Consummation
Entire Old Testament	Gospels	Acts	Epistles	Revelation
Design of the ark of the covenant: Gold and wood; gold for divinity and wood for humanity. It is a perfect picture of how Christ is fully God and fully man .	And the Word became flesh John 1:14 Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am." John 8:58 -- this verse is a direct claim of Jesus being God in human flesh because Jesus applies the name " I AM " to himself as God himself used the name in Exodus: God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM"; and He said, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, 'I AM has sent me to you.'" Exodus 3:14	he looked ahead and spoke of the resurrection of the Christ, that HE WAS NEITHER ABANDONED TO HADES, NOR DID His flesh SUFFER DECAY. Acts 2:31	By this you know the Spirit of God: every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God; 1 John 4:2	When I saw Him, I fell at His feet like a dead man. And He placed His right hand on me, saying, "Do not be afraid; I am the first and the last , and the living One; and I was dead, and behold, I am alive forevermore, and I have the keys of death and of Hades. Revelation 1:17-18
Regarding Abraham: Then he believed in the LORD; and He reckoned it to him as righteousness. Genesis 15:6 In your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice. Genesis 22:18	For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. John 3:16	Salvation by grace alone, through faith alone , in Jesus Christ alone is spread to all nations .	Even so Abraham BELIEVED GOD, AND IT WAS RECKONED TO HIM AS RIGHTEOUSNESS Galatians 3:6 (Genesis 15:6) The Scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel beforehand to Abraham, saying, "ALL THE NATIONS WILL BE BLESSED IN YOU." Galatians 3:8	"Who will not fear, O Lord, and glorify Your name? For You alone are holy; For ALL THE NATIONS WILL COME AND WORSHIP BEFORE YOU, FOR YOUR RIGHTEOUS ACTS HAVE BEEN REVEALED. " Revelation 15:4

The above three tables give you a simple overview or roadmap showing how God's wise plan is laid out in His Word, the Bible. Truly, all of the pieces of His plan are like the pieces of a beautiful mosaic.

Chapter 6: Man Created And Fallen

I believe that Adam and Eve were created in God's image, and they were spiritually alive because God's Spirit dwelt within them from the moment of their creation. Adam and Eve fell into sin through Satan's temptation and their own lack of faithfulness in God. As a result, God withdrew His Spirit from within Adam and Eve; from that moment, Adam and Eve were spiritually dead. All their offspring, which is all of humanity, are born spiritually dead and in Adam's image.

Genesis 5:3 When Adam had lived one hundred and thirty years, he became the father of a son **in his own likeness, according to his image**, and named him Seth.

As a result of being born in Adam's image, which means being spiritually dead, all human beings are alienated from God and corrupted physically, psychologically, emotionally, and spiritually. In their fallen, spiritually dead state, human beings are condemned to eternal death. The over-arching need for all people is to be reconciled to the God but there is nothing a person can do to reconcile them to God. Doing more good works than evil works cannot result in spiritual life and therefore reconciliation to God. Humanity's only hope is God's own gracious intervention. God has provided the only way of reconciliation which is the sinless life, sacrificial death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. In case you missed that, Jesus Christ is God in human flesh; God took on human flesh to do what we could never do; He paid the penalty for your sins and made a way for you to be reconciled to Him. But you must accept Jesus Christ's payment for your sins to be reconciled to God.

Romans 3:23 for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God,

Romans 5:12 Therefore, just as through one man sin entered into the world, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men, because all sinned—

John 3:16–18 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 "For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 "He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

1 Thessalonians 1:10 and to wait for His Son from heaven, whom He raised from the dead, that is Jesus, who rescues us from the wrath to come.

Acts 4:12 "And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must be saved."

I believe that man was originally created in the image of God. Man fell through sin, and because of his sin, lost his spiritual life; humans became dead in trespasses and sins. Spiritual death has been transmitted to the entire human race, except for Christ Jesus.

Genesis 1:26 Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness; and let them rule over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the sky and over the cattle and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."

Genesis 2:17 but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you will surely die."

Genesis 6:5 Then the LORD saw that the wickedness of man was great on the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.

Psalm 14:1-3 The fool has said in his heart, "There is no God." They are corrupt, they have committed abominable deeds; There is no one who does good. 2 The LORD has looked down from heaven upon the sons of men To see if there are any who understand, Who seek after God. 3 They have all turned aside, together they have become corrupt; There is no one who does good, not even one.

Psalm 51:5 Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, And in sin my mother conceived me.

Jeremiah 17:9 "The heart is more deceitful than all else And is desperately sick; Who can understand it?

John 3:6 "That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

John 5:40 and you are unwilling to come to Me so that you may have life.

John 6:35 Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to Me will not hunger, and he who believes in Me will never thirst.

Romans 3:10-20

10 as it is written,

"THERE IS NONE RIGHTEOUS, NOT EVEN ONE;

11 THERE IS NONE WHO UNDERSTANDS,

THERE IS NONE WHO SEEKS FOR GOD;

12 ALL HAVE TURNED ASIDE, TOGETHER THEY HAVE BECOME USELESS;

THERE IS NONE WHO DOES GOOD,

THERE IS NOT EVEN ONE."

13 "THEIR THROAT IS AN OPEN GRAVE,

WITH THEIR TONGUES THEY KEEP DECEIVING,"

"THE POISON OF ASPS IS UNDER THEIR LIPS";

14 "WHOSE MOUTH IS FULL OF CURSING AND BITTERNESS";

15 "THEIR FEET ARE SWIFT TO SHED BLOOD,

16 DESTRUCTION AND MISERY ARE IN THEIR PATHS,

17 AND THE PATH OF PEACE THEY HAVE NOT KNOWN."

18 "THERE IS NO FEAR OF GOD BEFORE THEIR EYES."

19 Now we know that whatever the Law says, it speaks to those who are under the Law, so that every mouth may be closed and all the world may become accountable to God;

20 because by the works of the Law no flesh will be justified in His sight; for through the Law *comes* the knowledge of sin.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Romans 8:6-7 For the mind set on the flesh is death, but the mind set on the Spirit is life and peace, 7 because the mind set on the flesh is hostile toward God; for it does not subject itself to the law of God, for it is not even able *to do so*,

Ephesians 2:1-3 And you were dead in your trespasses and sins, 2 in which you formerly walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, of the spirit that is now working in the sons of disobedience. 3 Among them we too all formerly lived in the lusts of our flesh, indulging the desires of the flesh and of the mind, and were by nature children of wrath, even as the rest.

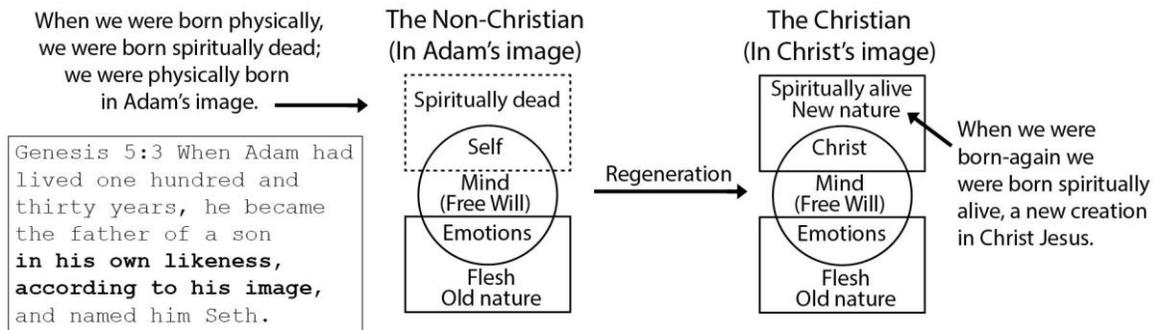
1 Timothy 5:6 But she who gives herself to wanton pleasure is dead even while she lives.

1 John 3:8 the one who practices sin is of the devil; for the devil has sinned from the beginning. The Son of God appeared for this purpose, to destroy the works of the devil.

Chapter 7: What Does Born-Again Mean?

Born-again means God has regenerated you and God the Holy Spirit dwells within you which means you have been given eternal life. You cannot make yourself born-again. Only God can regenerate you. Born-again means, you admit you are a sinner, and you no longer trust in your good works to make you acceptable to God. Instead, you trust in the finished work of Jesus Christ to make you acceptable to God. Jesus lived a sinless life which fulfilled the requirements of the Law and He died on the cross to pay for your sins. The moment you realize that and trust in Jesus instead of yourself is the moment you are born-again. Jesus Christ indwells you from that moment and continues to dwell in you for all eternity.

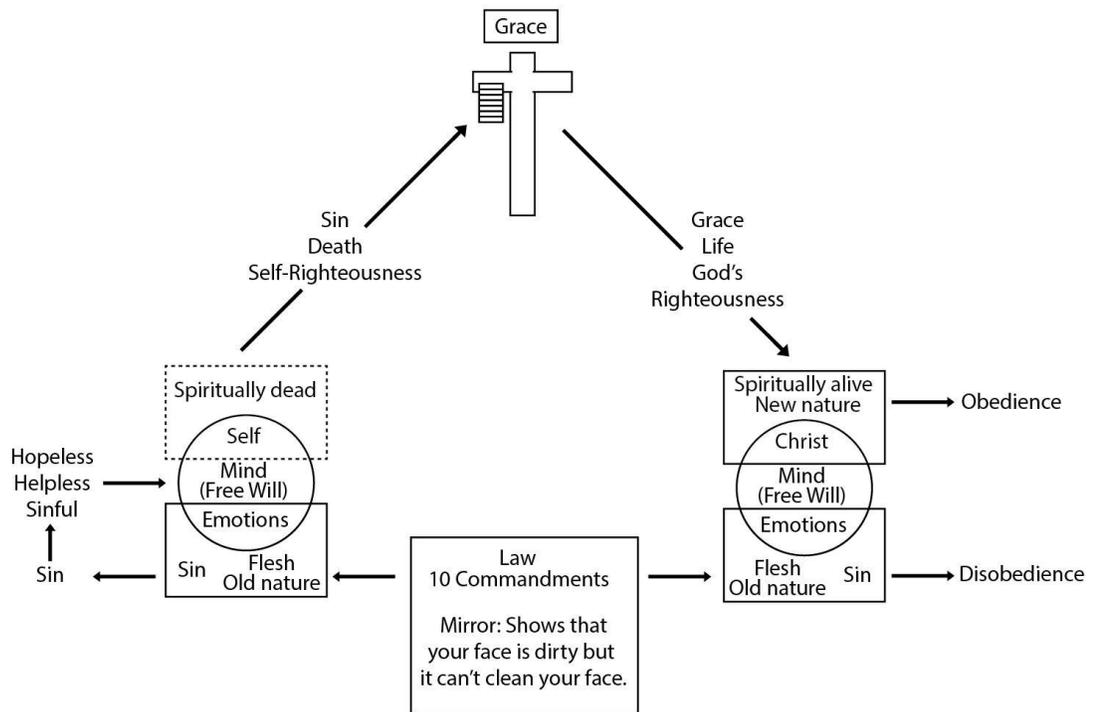
NOTE: The circle shown in the following diagram represents the soul.



Chapter 8: The Exchanged Life -- 42Thru

42Thru is an easy way to remember the following:

Jesus Christ gave His life **for** me, **42**
 so that He could give His life **to** me, **Thru**
 so that He could live His life **through** me.



2 Corinthians 5:21 He made Him who knew no sin *to be* sin on our behalf, so that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

Colossians 2:14 having canceled out the certificate of debt consisting of decrees against us, which was hostile to us; and He has taken it out of the way, having nailed it to the cross.

Galatians 2:20–21 “I have been crucified with Christ; and **it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me**; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 “I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness comes through the Law, then Christ died needlessly.”

Chapter 9: The Exchanged Life -- Key Verses

Romans 5:17 For if by the transgression of the one, death reigned through the one, much more those who receive the abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness will reign in life through the One, Jesus Christ.

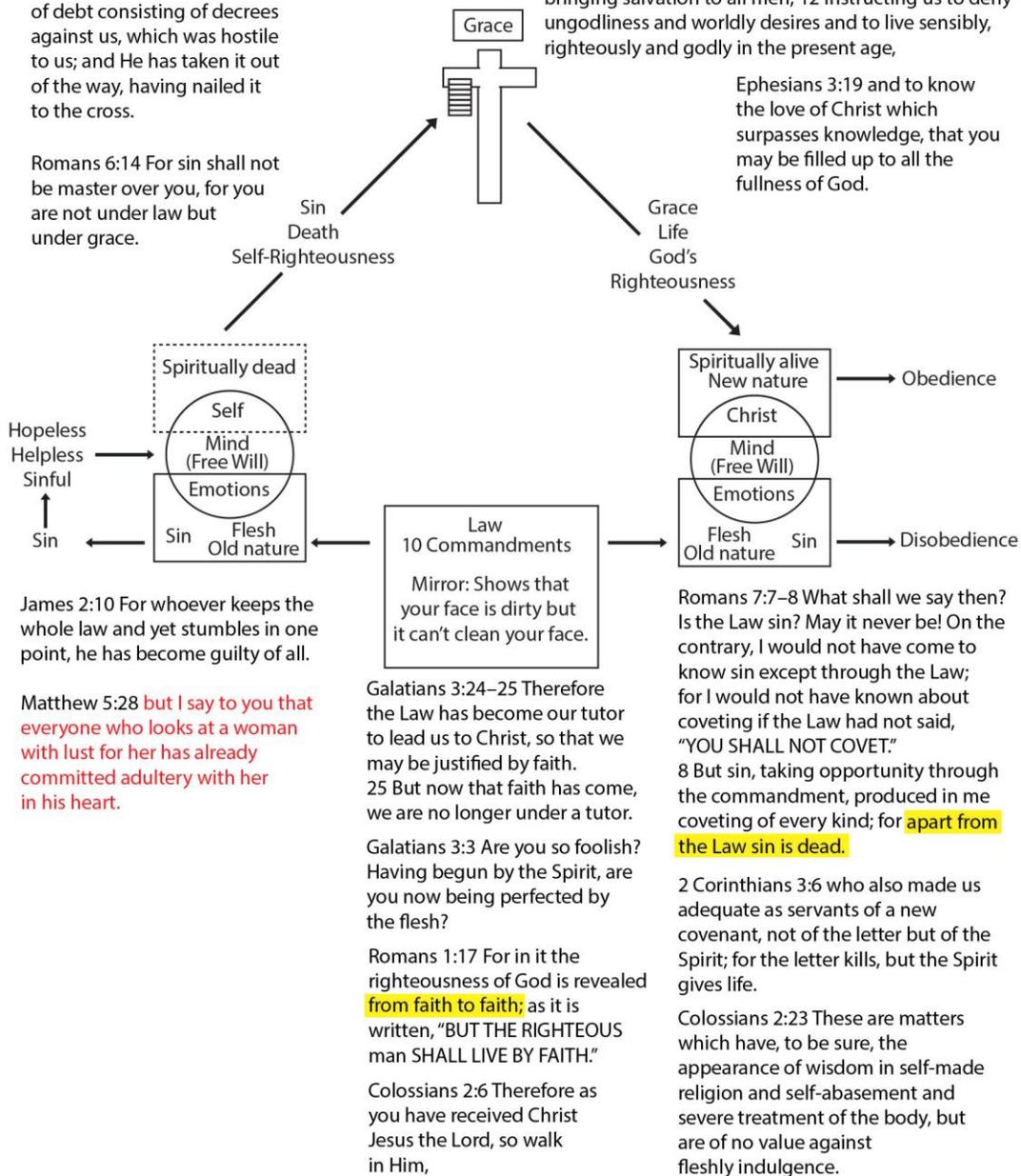
Galatians 2:20–21 "I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 "I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness comes through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."

Colossians 2:14 having canceled out the certificate of debt consisting of decrees against us, which was hostile to us; and He has taken it out of the way, having nailed it to the cross.

Titus 2:11–12 For the grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation to all men, 12 instructing us to deny ungodliness and worldly desires and to live sensibly, righteously and godly in the present age,

Ephesians 3:19 and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.

Romans 6:14 For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law but under grace.



James 2:10 For whoever keeps the whole law and yet stumbles in one point, he has become guilty of all.

Matthew 5:28 **but I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.**

Galatians 3:24–25 Therefore the Law has become our tutor to lead us to Christ, so that we may be justified by faith. 25 But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a tutor.

Galatians 3:3 Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now being perfected by the flesh?

Romans 1:17 For in it the righteousness of God is revealed **from faith to faith**; as it is written, "BUT THE RIGHTEOUS man SHALL LIVE BY FAITH."

Colossians 2:6 Therefore as you have received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in Him,

Romans 7:7–8 What shall we say then? Is the Law sin? May it never be! On the contrary, I would not have come to know sin except through the Law; for I would not have known about coveting if the Law had not said, "YOU SHALL NOT COVET."

8 But sin, taking opportunity through the commandment, produced in me coveting of every kind; for **apart from the Law sin is dead.**

2 Corinthians 3:6 who also made us adequate as servants of a new covenant, not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life.

Colossians 2:23 These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religion and self-abasement and severe treatment of the body, but are of no value against fleshly indulgence.

Chapter 10: What Does It Mean To Be A Christian?

What does it mean to be a Christian? It means you are NOT trusting in your own good works to make you acceptable to God. If you believe if you do more good works than evil works that you are a Christian, then you are wrong. If you believe following the Ten Commandments will get you into heaven, then you are wrong. Being a Christian means, you are living the exchanged life, as explained in the previous chapter.

Chapter 11: The Non-Christian And The Christian

The non-Christian depends on his own good works to make himself acceptable to God.
The Christian depends ONLY on Jesus Christ's finished work, in His sinless life, and His death on the cross to make the Christian acceptable to God.

The non-Christian is self-righteous in his own eyes but, he is unrighteous before God.
The Christian has been given the righteousness of Jesus Christ and he is therefore righteous before God.

The non-Christian is physically alive but spiritually dead.
The Christian is physically alive and spiritually alive because he has been born-again.

The non-Christian thinks there are many ways to get to heaven.
The Christian knows it is only through the finished work of Jesus Christ that a person is saved from hell and goes to heaven.

The non-Christian lives a self-directed life.
The Christian lives a Christ-directed life.

The non-Christian thinks the things of God are foolishness.
The Christian knows the things of God set him free.

The non-Christian is dependent upon only himself.
The Christian is dependent upon Jesus Christ.

Chapter 12: Jesus Christ Claimed To Be God

Why was Jesus Killed? For which reason, under the Law of Moses, did Jesus Christ's enemies want to kill Him? We do not have to wonder why Jesus was killed; the Bible tells us exactly why He was killed:

John 10:30–33 **"I and the Father are one."** 31 The Jews picked up stones again to stone Him. 32 Jesus answered them, **"I showed you many good works from the Father; for which of them are you stoning Me?"** 33 The Jews answered Him, **"For a good work we do not stone You, but for blasphemy; and because You, being a man, make Yourself out to be God."**

Jesus Christ was not guilty of blasphemy because He is God. Jesus Christ was killed because of our sins; because of your sins and my sins.

Jesus claims to be God.

Exodus 3:14 God said to Moses, **"I AM WHO I AM";** and He said, **"Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, 'I AM has sent me to you.' "**

John 8:56–59 **"Your father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw *it* and was glad."** 57 So the Jews said to Him, **"You are not yet fifty years old, and have You seen Abraham?"** 58 Jesus said to them, **"Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am."** 59 Therefore they picked up stones to throw at Him, but Jesus hid Himself and went out of the temple.

Luke 22:70 And they all said, **"Are You the Son of God, then?"** And He said to them, **"Yes, I am."**

Jesus claims to be equal with God.

John 5:18 For this reason therefore the Jews were seeking all the more to kill Him, because He not only was breaking the Sabbath, but also was calling God His own Father, making Himself equal with God.

John 10:30 **"I and the Father are one."**

Jesus calls Himself Lord.

John 13:13 **"You call Me Teacher and Lord; and you are right, for so I am."**

He claims to be the answer to our spiritually lost condition.

John 6:35 Jesus said to them, **"I am the bread of life; he who comes to Me will not hunger, and he who believes in Me will never thirst."**

John 8:12 Then Jesus again spoke to them, saying, "I am the Light of the world; he who follows Me will not walk in the darkness, but will have the Light of life."

John 10:9–11 "I am the door; if anyone enters through Me, he will be saved, and will go in and out and find pasture. 10 "The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy; I came that they may have life, and have *it* abundantly. 11 "I am the good shepherd; the good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep.

John 11:25–26 Jesus said to her, "I am the resurrection and the life; he who believes in Me will live even if he dies, 26 and everyone who lives and believes in Me will never die. Do you believe this?"

John 14:6 Jesus *said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; **no one comes to the Father but through Me.**

John 15:5 "I am the vine, you are the branches; he who abides in Me and I in him, he bears much fruit, for apart from Me you can do nothing.

He claims sinless perfection.

John 8:29 "And He who sent Me is with Me; He has not left Me alone, for I always do the things that are pleasing to Him."

John 8:46 "Which one of you convicts Me of sin? If I speak truth, why do you not believe Me?"

Jesus claims to be the Messiah and expresses the rights of deity.

Mark 14:61–62 But He kept silent and did not answer. Again the high priest was questioning Him, and saying to Him, "Are You the Christ, the Son of the Blessed *One*?" 62 And Jesus said, "I am; and you shall see THE SON OF MAN SITTING AT THE RIGHT HAND OF POWER, and COMING WITH THE CLOUDS OF HEAVEN."

He receives worship, which is an action reserved for God alone.

Matthew 4:10 Then Jesus *said to him, "Go, Satan! For it is written, 'YOU SHALL WORSHIP THE LORD YOUR GOD, AND SERVE HIM ONLY.' "

Matthew 28:17–18 When they saw Him, they worshiped *Him*; but some were doubtful. 18 And Jesus came up and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth.

He forgives sin, another prerogative of God alone.

Mark 2:1–13 When He had come back to Capernaum several days afterward, it was heard that He was at home. 2 And many were gathered together, so that there was no longer room, not even near the door; and He was speaking the word to them. 3 And they *came, bringing to Him a paralytic, carried by four men. 4 Being unable to get to Him because of

the crowd, they removed the roof above Him; and when they had dug an opening, they let down the pallet on which the paralytic was lying. 5 And Jesus seeing their faith *said to the paralytic, "Son, your sins are forgiven." 6 But some of the scribes were sitting there and reasoning in their hearts, 7 "Why does this man speak that way? He is blaspheming; who can forgive sins but God alone?" 8 Immediately Jesus, aware in His spirit that they were reasoning that way within themselves, *said to them, "Why are you reasoning about these things in your hearts? 9 "Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, 'Your sins are forgiven'; or to say, 'Get up, and pick up your pallet and walk'? 10 "But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins"—He *said to the paralytic, 11 "I say to you, get up, pick up your pallet and go home." 12 And he got up and immediately picked up the pallet and went out in the sight of everyone, so that they were all amazed and were glorifying God, saying, "We have never seen anything like this." 13 And He went out again by the seashore; and all the people were coming to Him, and He was teaching them.

He claims to be equal with God.

John 5:17–18 But He answered them, "My Father is working until now, and I Myself am working." 18 For this reason therefore the Jews were seeking all the more to kill Him, because He not only was breaking the Sabbath, but also was calling God His own Father, making Himself equal with God.

He was officially convicted of blasphemy – proclaiming Himself equal with God.

Mark 14:60–64 The high priest stood up *and came* forward and questioned Jesus, saying, "Do You not answer? What is it that these men are testifying against You?" 61 But He kept silent and did not answer. Again the high priest was questioning Him, and saying to Him, "Are You the Christ, the Son of the Blessed *One*?" 62 And Jesus said, "I am; and you shall see THE SON OF MAN SITTING AT THE RIGHT HAND OF POWER, and COMING WITH THE CLOUDS OF HEAVEN." 63 Tearing his clothes, the high priest *said, "What further need do we have of witnesses? 64 "You have heard the blasphemy; how does it seem to you?" And they all condemned Him to be deserving of death.

He calls himself **the first and the last** which is a name God uses for himself.

Isaiah 44:6 "Thus says the Lord, the King of Israel and his Redeemer, the Lord of hosts: **I am the first and I am the last,**
And there is no God besides Me.

Revelation 1:17 When I saw Him, I fell at His feet like a dead man. And He placed His right hand on me, saying, "Do not be afraid; **I am the first and the last,**

He claimed He could answer prayer and directed his followers to pray "in His name".

John 14:13–14 "Whatever you ask in My name, that will I do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. 14 "If you ask Me anything in My name, I will do it.

The Word became flesh.

John 1:1–2,14 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and **the Word was God**. 2 He was in the beginning with God. 14 **And the Word became flesh**, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

All the fullness of the Godhead.

Colossians 2:9 For in Him all the fullness of Deity dwells in bodily form,

He accepts others referring to Him as God.

John 20:28–29 Thomas answered and said to Him, "My Lord and my God!" 29 Jesus *said to him, "Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed *are* they who did not see, and *yet* believed."

He is called the true God.

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God has come, and has given us understanding so that we may know Him who is true; and we are in Him who is true, in His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God and eternal life.

He is called our great God.

Titus 2:13 looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior, Christ Jesus,

He is called God over all.

Romans 9:5 whose are the fathers, and from whom is the Christ according to the flesh, who is over all, God blessed forever. Amen.

He is called the Holy One in Acts 3:14 which is a name used frequently for God the Father.

Acts 3:14 "But you disowned the Holy and Righteous One and asked for a murderer to be granted to you,

Hosea 11:9 I will not execute My fierce anger;
I will not destroy Ephraim again.
For I am God and not man, the Holy One in your midst,
And I will not come in wrath.

Isaiah 48:17 Thus says the LORD, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel,
"I am the LORD your God, who teaches you to profit,
Who leads you in the way you should go.

God's words to the Son call Jesus God.

Psalm 45:6 Your throne, O God, is forever and ever;
A scepter of uprightness is the scepter of Your kingdom.

Hebrews 1:8 But of the Son *He says*,
"YOUR THRONE, O GOD, IS FOREVER AND EVER,
AND THE RIGHTEOUS SCEPTER IS THE SCEPTER OF HIS KINGDOM.

He is called the Alpha and the Omega and the Almighty.

Isaiah 41:4 "Who has performed and accomplished it,
Calling forth the generations from the beginning?
'I, the Lord, am the first, and with the last. I am He.' "

Revelation 1:8 "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "who is and who was
and who is to come, the Almighty."

Christ's resurrection from the dead was recorded in great detail in the New Testament. The apostles were even willing to die for the claim that Jesus appeared to them again and again over 40 days — not to mention the empty tomb and over 500 people who saw the resurrected Christ. The apostles claimed to have seen, heard, and touched the risen Christ. He even ate with them; over 12 different appearances are recorded.

1 Corinthians 15:6-8 After that He appeared to more than five hundred brethren at one time, most of whom remain until now, but some have fallen asleep; 7 then He appeared to James, then to all the apostles; 8 and last of all, as to one untimely born, He appeared to me also.

Jesus claimed to be none other than God in human flesh. And no other great world religious leader ever claimed to be God.

The following 55 points are taken from: Torrey, R. (1897). *The new topical text book: A scriptural text book for the use of ministers, teachers, and all Christian workers* (New Revised and enlarged.). New York: Fleming H. Revell Co.

English translations of the Bible translate the Hebrew word **yhw** (Jehovah in English) as LORD in all capital letters. English translations of the Bible translate the Hebrew word **Adonai** as Lord.

1. As Jehovah.

Isaiah 40:3 A voice is calling, "Clear the way for the LORD in the wilderness; Make smooth in the desert a highway for our God.

Matthew 3:3 For this is the one referred to by Isaiah the prophet when he said, "THE VOICE OF ONE CRYING IN THE WILDERNESS, 'MAKE READY THE WAY OF THE LORD, MAKE HIS PATHS STRAIGHT!' "

2. As Jehovah of glory.

Psalm 24:7,10 Lift up your heads, O gates,
And be lifted up, O ancient doors,
That the King of glory may come in!
10 Who is this King of glory?
The LORD of hosts,
He is the King of glory.
Selah.

1 Corinthians 2:8 the wisdom which none of the rulers of this age has understood; for if they had understood it they would not have crucified the Lord of glory;

James 2:1 My brethren, do not hold your faith in our glorious Lord Jesus Christ with an attitude of personal favoritism.

3. As Jehovah, our RIGHTEOUSNESS.

Jeremiah 23:5-6
5 "Behold, *the* days are coming," declares the LORD,
"When I will raise up for David a righteous Branch;
And He will reign as king and act wisely
And do justice and righteousness in the land.
6 "In His days Judah will be saved,
And Israel will dwell securely;
And this is His name by which He will be called,
'The LORD our righteousness.'

1 Corinthians 1:30 But by His doing you are in Christ Jesus, who became to us wisdom from God, and righteousness and sanctification, and redemption,

4. As Jehovah, above all.

Psalm 97:9 For You are the LORD Most High over all the earth;
You are exalted far above all gods.

John 3:31 "He who comes from above is above all, he who is of the earth is from the earth and speaks of the earth. He who comes from heaven is above all.

5. As Jehovah, the First and the Last.

Isaiah 44:6 "Thus says the LORD, the King of Israel and his Redeemer, the LORD of hosts:
'I am the first and I am the last,
And there is no God besides Me.

Revelation 1:17 When I saw Him, I fell at His feet like a dead man. And He placed His right hand on me, saying, "Do not be afraid; I am the first and the last,

Isaiah 48:12-16
12 "Listen to Me, O Jacob, even Israel whom I called;
I am He, I am the first, I am also the last.
13 "Surely My hand founded the earth,
And My right hand spread out the heavens;

When I call to them, they stand together.

14 "Assemble, all of you, and listen!

Who among them has declared these things?

The LORD loves him; he will carry out His good pleasure on Babylon,

And His arm *will be against* the Chaldeans.

15 "I, even I, have spoken; indeed I have called him,

I have brought him, and He will make his ways successful.

16 "Come near to Me, listen to this:

From the first I have not spoken in secret,

From the time it took place, I was there.

And now the Lord GOD has sent Me, and His Spirit."

Revelation 22:13 "I am the Alpha and the Omega, **the first and the last**, the beginning and the end."

6. As Jehovah's Fellow and Equal.

Zechariah 13:7

7 "Awake, O sword, against My Shepherd,

And against the man, My Associate,"

Declares the LORD of hosts.

"Strike the Shepherd that the sheep may be scattered;

And I will turn My hand against the little ones.

Philippians 2:6 who, although He existed in the form of God, did not regard equality with God a thing to be grasped,

7. As Jehovah of Hosts.

Isaiah 6:1-3

1 In the year of King Uzziah's death I saw the Lord sitting on a throne, lofty and exalted, with the train of His robe filling the temple.

2 Seraphim stood above Him, each having six wings: with two he covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew.

3 And one called out to another and said,

"Holy, Holy, Holy, is the LORD of hosts,

The whole earth is full of His glory."

John 12:41 These things Isaiah said because he saw His glory, and he spoke of Him.

Isaiah 8:13-14

13 "It is the LORD of hosts whom you should regard as holy.

And He shall be your fear,

And He shall be your dread.

14 "Then He shall become a sanctuary;

But to both the houses of Israel, a stone to strike and a rock to stumble over,

And a snare and a trap for the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

1 Peter 2:8 and, "A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE"; for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this *doom* they were also appointed.

8. As Jehovah, the Shepherd.

Isaiah 40:11 Like a shepherd He will tend His flock,
In His arm He will gather the lambs
And carry *them* in His bosom;
He will gently lead the nursing *ewes*.

Hebrews 13:20 Now the God of peace, who brought up from the dead the great Shepherd
of the sheep through the blood of the eternal covenant, *even* Jesus our Lord,

9. As Jehovah, for whose glory all things were created.

Proverbs 16:4

4 The LORD has made everything for its own purpose,
Even the wicked for the day of evil.

Colossians 1:16

16 For by Him all things were created, *both* in the heavens and on earth, visible and
invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things have been
created through Him and for Him.

10. As Jehovah, the Messenger of the covenant.

Malachi 3:1

1 "Behold, I am going to send My messenger, and he will clear the way before Me. And
the Lord, whom you seek, will suddenly come to His temple; and the messenger of the
covenant, in whom you delight, behold, He is coming," says the LORD of hosts.

Mark 1:2

2 As it is written in Isaiah the prophet:
"BEHOLD, I SEND MY MESSENGER AHEAD OF YOU,
WHO WILL PREPARE YOUR WAY;

Luke 2:27

27 And he came in the Spirit into the temple; and when the parents brought in the child
Jesus, to carry out for Him the custom of the Law,

11. Invoked as Jehovah.

Joel 2:32

32 "And it will come about that whoever calls on the name of the LORD
Will be delivered;
For on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem
There will be those who escape,
As the LORD has said,
Even among the survivors whom the LORD calls.

Acts 2:21 'AND IT SHALL BE THAT EVERYONE WHO CALLS ON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED.'

1 Corinthians 1:2 To the church of God which is at Corinth, to those who have been sanctified in Christ Jesus, saints by calling, with all who in every place call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, their *Lord* and ours:

12. As the Eternal God and Creator.

Psalm 102:24–27 I say, “O my God, do not take me away in the midst of my days, Your years are throughout all generations. 25 “Of old You founded the earth, And the heavens are the work of Your hands. 26 “Even they will perish, but You endure; And all of them will wear out like a garment; Like clothing You will change them and they will be changed. 27 “But You are the same, And Your years will not come to an end.

Hebrews 1:8 But of the Son *He says*,
“YOUR THRONE, O GOD, IS FOREVER AND EVER,
AND THE RIGHTEOUS SCEPTER IS THE SCEPTER OF HIS KINGDOM.

Hebrews 1:10–12 And,
“YOU, LORD, IN THE BEGINNING LAID THE FOUNDATION OF THE EARTH,
AND THE HEAVENS ARE THE WORKS OF YOUR HANDS;
11 THEY WILL PERISH, BUT YOU REMAIN;
AND THEY ALL WILL BECOME OLD LIKE A GARMENT,
12 AND LIKE A MANTLE YOU WILL ROLL THEM UP;
LIKE A GARMENT THEY WILL ALSO BE CHANGED.
BUT YOU ARE THE SAME,
AND YOUR YEARS WILL NOT COME TO AN END.”

13. As the mighty God.

Isaiah 9:6 For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us; And the government will rest on His shoulders; And His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace.

John 3:16 “For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.

14. As the Great God and Savior.

Hosea 1:7 “But I will have compassion on the house of Judah and deliver them by the LORD their God, and will not deliver them by bow, sword, battle, horses or horsemen.”

Titus 2:13 looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior, Christ Jesus,

15. As God over all.

Psalm 45:6–7 Your throne, O God, is forever and ever; A scepter of uprightness is the scepter of Your kingdom. 7 You have loved righteousness and hated wickedness; Therefore God, Your God, has anointed You With the oil of joy above Your fellows.

Romans 9:5 whose are the fathers, and from whom is the Christ according to the flesh, who is over all, God blessed forever. Amen.

16. As the true God.

Jeremiah 10:10 But the LORD is the true God;
He is the living God and the everlasting King.
At His wrath the earth quakes,
And the nations cannot endure His indignation.

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God has come, and has given us understanding so that we may know Him who is true; and we are in Him who is true, in His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God and eternal life.

17. As God the Word.

John 1:1, 14 1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. 14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

18. As God the judge.

Ecclesiastes 12:14 For God will bring every act to judgment, everything which is hidden, whether it is good or evil.

1 Corinthians 4:5 Therefore do not go on passing judgment before the time, *but wait* until the Lord comes who will both bring to light the things hidden in the darkness and disclose the motives of *men's* hearts; and then each man's praise will come to him from God.

2 Corinthians 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may be recompensed for his deeds in the body, according to what he has done, whether good or bad.

2 Timothy 4:1 I solemnly charge *you* in the presence of God and of Christ Jesus, who is to judge the living and the dead, and by His appearing and His kingdom:

19. As Immanuel.

Isaiah 7:14 "Therefore the Lord Himself will give you a sign: Behold, a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.

Matthew 1:23 "BEHOLD, THE VIRGIN SHALL BE WITH CHILD AND SHALL BEAR A SON, AND THEY SHALL CALL HIS NAME IMMANUEL," which translated means, "GOD WITH US."

20. As King of kings and Lord of lords.

Daniel 10:17 "For how can such a servant of my lord talk with such as my lord? As for me, there remains just now no strength in me, nor has any breath been left in me."

Revelation 1:5 and from Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To Him who loves us and released us from our sins by His blood—

Revelation 17:14 "These will wage war against the Lamb, and the Lamb will overcome them, because He is Lord of lords and King of kings, and those who are with Him *are the called and chosen and faithful.*"

21. As the Holy One.

1 Samuel 2:2 "There is no one holy like the LORD, Indeed, there is no one besides You, Nor is there any rock like our God.

Acts 3:14 "But you disowned the Holy and Righteous One and asked for a murderer to be granted to you,

22. As the Lord from heaven.

1 Corinthians 15:47 The first man is from the earth, earthy; the second man is from heaven.

23. As Lord of the Sabbath.

Genesis 2:3 Then God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it He rested from all His work which God had created and made.

Matthew 12:8 "For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

24. As Lord of all.

Acts 10:36 "The word which He sent to the sons of Israel, preaching peace through Jesus Christ (He is Lord of all)—

Romans 10:11–13 For the Scripture says, "WHOEVER BELIEVES IN HIM WILL NOT BE DISAPPOINTED." 12 For there is no distinction between Jew and Greek; for the same *Lord* is Lord of all, abounding in riches for all who call on Him; 13 for "WHOEVER WILL CALL ON THE NAME OF THE LORD WILL BE SAVED."

25. As Son of God.

Matthew 26:63–68 63 But Jesus kept silent. And the high priest said to Him, "I adjure You by the living God, that You tell us whether You are the Christ, the Son of God." 64 Jesus *said to him, "You have said it *yourself*; nevertheless I tell you, hereafter you will see THE SON OF MAN SITTING AT THE RIGHT HAND OF POWER, and COMING ON THE CLOUDS OF HEAVEN." 65

Then the high priest tore his robes and said, "He has blasphemed! What further need do we have of witnesses? Behold, you have now heard the blasphemy; 66 what do you think?" They answered, "He deserves death!" 67 Then they spat in His face and beat Him with their fists; and others slapped Him, 68 and said, "Prophecy to us, You Christ; who is the one who hit You?"

26. As the only begotten Son of the Father.

John 1:14,18 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth. 18 No one has seen God at any time; the only begotten God who is in the bosom of the Father, He has explained *Him*.

John 3:16–18 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 "For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 "He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

1 John 4:9 By this the love of God was manifested in us, that God has sent His only begotten Son into the world so that we might live through Him.

27. His blood is called the blood of God.

Acts 20:28 "Be on guard for yourselves and for all the flock, among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God which He purchased with His own blood.

28. As one with the Father.

John 10:30,38 "I and the Father are one." 38 but if I do them, though you do not believe Me, believe the works, so that you may know and understand that the Father is in Me, and I in the Father."

John 12:45,50 "He who sees Me sees the One who sent Me. 50 "I know that His commandment is eternal life; therefore the things I speak, I speak just as the Father has told Me."

John 14:7–10 "If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also; from now on you know Him, and have seen Him." 8 Philip *said to Him, "Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for us." 9 Jesus *said to him, "Have I been so long with you, and yet you have not come to know Me, Philip? He who has seen Me has seen the Father; how *can* you say, 'Show us the Father'? 10 "Do you not believe that I am in the Father, and the Father is in Me? The words that I say to you I do not speak on My own initiative, but the Father abiding in Me does His works.

John 17:10 and all things that are Mine are Yours, and Yours are Mine; and I have been glorified in them.

29. As sending the Spirit, equally with the Father.

John 14:16 "I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Helper, that He may be with you forever;

John 15:26 "When the Helper comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, *that is the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father, He will testify about Me,*

30. As entitled to equal honor with the Father.

John 5:23 *so that all will honor the Son even as they honor the Father. He who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent Him.*

31. As Owner of all things, equally with the Father.

John 16:15 "All things that the Father has are Mine; therefore I said that He takes of Mine and will disclose *it* to you.

32. As unrestricted by the law of the sabbath, equally with the Father.

John 5:16-17 For this reason the Jews were persecuting Jesus, because He was doing these things on the Sabbath. 17 But He answered them, "My Father is working until now, and I Myself am working."

33. As the Source of grace, equally with the Father.

2 Thessalonians 2:16-17 Now may our Lord Jesus Christ Himself and God our Father, who has loved us and given us eternal comfort and good hope by grace, 17 comfort and strengthen your hearts in every good work and word.

34. As unsearchable, equally with the Father.

Proverbs 30:4

4 Who has ascended into heaven and descended?
Who has gathered the wind in His fists?
Who has wrapped the waters in His garment?
Who has established all the ends of the earth?
What is His name or His son's name?
Surely you know!

Matthew 11:27 "All things have been handed over to Me by My Father; and no one knows the Son except the Father; nor does anyone know the Father except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son wills to reveal *Him*.

35. As Creator of all things.

Isaiah 40:28 Do you not know? Have you not heard?
The Everlasting God, the LORD, the Creator of the ends of the earth
Does not become weary or tired.
His understanding is inscrutable.

John 1:3 All things came into being through Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being.

Colossians 1:16 For by Him all things were created, *both* in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things have been created through Him and for Him.

Hebrews 1:2 in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the world.

36. As Supporter and Preserver of all things.

Nehemiah 9:6 "You alone are the LORD.
You have made the heavens,
The heaven of heavens with all their host,
The earth and all that is on it,
The seas and all that is in them.
You give life to all of them
And the heavenly host bows down before You.

Colossians 1:17 He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together.

Hebrews 1:3 And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power. When He had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

37. As possessed of the fulness of the God head.

Colossians 2:9 For in Him all the fullness of Deity dwells in bodily form,

Hebrews 1:3 And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power. When He had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

38. As raising the dead.

John 5:21 "For just as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, even so the Son also gives life to whom He wishes.

John 6:40,54 "For this is the will of My Father, that everyone who beholds the Son and believes in Him will have eternal life, and I Myself will raise him up on the last day." 54 "He who eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day.

39. As raising himself from the dead.

John 2:19–21 Jesus answered them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up." 20 The Jews then said, "It took forty-six years to build this temple, and will You raise it up in three days?" 21 But He was speaking of the temple of His body.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

John 10:18 "No one has taken it away from Me, but I lay it down on My own initiative. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. This commandment I received from My Father."

40. As Eternal.

Isaiah 9:6 For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us;
And the government will rest on His shoulders;
And His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God,
Eternal Father, Prince of Peace.

Micah 5:2 "But as for you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,
Too little to be among the clans of Judah,
From you One will go forth for Me to be ruler in Israel.
His goings forth are from long ago,
From the days of eternity."

John 1:1, 14 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. 14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Colossians 1:17 He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together.

Hebrews 1:8–10 But of the Son *He says*,
"YOUR THRONE, O GOD, IS FOREVER AND EVER,
AND THE RIGHTEOUS SCEPTER IS THE SCEPTER OF HIS KINGDOM.
9 "YOU HAVE LOVED RIGHTEOUSNESS AND HATED LAWLESSNESS;
THEREFORE GOD, YOUR GOD, HAS ANOINTED YOU
WITH THE OIL OF GLADNESS ABOVE YOUR COMPANIONS."
10 And,
"YOU, LORD, IN THE BEGINNING LAID THE FOUNDATION OF THE EARTH,
AND THE HEAVENS ARE THE WORKS OF YOUR HANDS;

Revelation 1:8 "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "who is and who was and who is to come, the Almighty."

41. As Omnipresent.

Matthew 18:20 "For where two or three have gathered together in My name, I am there in their midst."

Matthew 28:20 teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

John 3:13 "No one has ascended into heaven, but He who descended from heaven: the Son of Man.

42. As Omnipotent.

Psalm 45:3 Gird Your sword on *Your* thigh, O Mighty One,
In Your splendor and Your majesty!

Philippians 3:21 who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His glory, by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.

Revelation 1:8 "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "who is and who was and who is to come, the Almighty."

43. As Omniscient.

John 16:30 "Now we know that You know all things, and have no need for anyone to question You; by this we believe that You came from God."

John 21:17 He *said to him the third time, "Simon, son of John, do you love Me?" Peter was grieved because He said to him the third time, "Do you love Me?" And he said to Him, "Lord, You know all things; You know that I love You." Jesus *said to him, "Tend My sheep.

44. As discerning the thoughts of the heart.

1 Kings 8:39 then hear in heaven Your dwelling place, and forgive and act and render to each according to all his ways, whose heart You know, for You alone know the hearts of all the sons of men,

Luke 5:22 But Jesus, aware of their reasonings, answered and said to them, "Why are you reasoning in your hearts?"

Ezekiel 11:5 Then the Spirit of the LORD fell upon me, and He said to me, "Say, 'Thus says the LORD, "So you think, house of Israel, for I know your thoughts.

John 2:24–25 But Jesus, on His part, was not entrusting Himself to them, for He knew all men, 25 and because He did not need anyone to testify concerning man, for He Himself knew what was in man.

Revelation 2:23 'And I will kill her children with pestilence, and all the churches will know that I am He who searches the minds and hearts; and I will give to each one of you according to your deeds.

45. As unchangeable.

Malachi 3:6 "For I, the LORD, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed.

Hebrews 1:12 AND LIKE A MANTLE YOU WILL ROLL THEM UP;
LIKE A GARMENT THEY WILL ALSO BE CHANGED.
BUT YOU ARE THE SAME,
AND YOUR YEARS WILL NOT COME TO AN END."

Hebrews 13:8 Jesus Christ *is* the same yesterday and today and forever.

46. As having power to forgive sins.

Colossians 3:13 bearing with one another, and forgiving each other, whoever has a complaint against anyone; just as the Lord forgave you, so also should you.

Mark 2:7–10 “Why does this man speak that way? He is blaspheming; who can forgive sins but God alone?” 8 Immediately Jesus, aware in His spirit that they were reasoning that way within themselves, *said to them, “Why are you reasoning about these things in your hearts? 9 “Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, ‘Your sins are forgiven’; or to say, ‘Get up, and pick up your pallet and walk’? 10 “But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins”—He *said to the paralytic,

47. As Giver of pastors to the Church.

Jeremiah 3:15 “Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and understanding.

Ephesians 4:11–13 And He gave some *as* apostles, and some *as* prophets, and some *as* evangelists, and some *as* pastors and teachers, 12 for the equipping of the saints for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Christ; 13 until we all attain to the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to a mature man, to the measure of the stature which belongs to the fullness of Christ.

48. As Husband of the Church.

Isaiah 54:5 “For your husband is your Maker,
Whose name is the LORD of hosts;
And your Redeemer is the Holy One of Israel,
Who is called the God of all the earth.

Ephesians 5:25–33 Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself up for her, 26 so that He might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word, 27 that He might present to Himself the church in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she would be holy and blameless. 28 So husbands ought also to love their own wives as their own bodies. He who loves his own wife loves himself; 29 for no one ever hated his own flesh, but nourishes and cherishes it, just as Christ also *does* the church, 30 because we are members of His body. 31 FOR THIS REASON A MAN SHALL LEAVE HIS FATHER AND MOTHER AND SHALL BE JOINED TO HIS WIFE, AND THE TWO SHALL BECOME ONE FLESH. 32 This mystery is great; but I am speaking with reference to Christ and the church. 33 Nevertheless, each individual among you also is to love his own wife even as himself, and the wife must *see to it* that she respects her husband.

Isaiah 62:5 For *as* a young man marries a virgin,
So your sons will marry you;
And *as* the bridegroom rejoices over the bride,
So your God will rejoice over you.

Revelation 21:2,9 Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth; for the first heaven and the first earth passed away, and there is no longer *any* sea. 2 And I saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, made ready as a bride adorned for her husband. 9 Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues came and spoke with me, saying, “Come here, I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb.”

49. As the object of divine worship.

Acts 7:59 They went on stoning Stephen as he called on *the Lord* and said, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit!"

2 Corinthians 12:8–9 Concerning this I implored the Lord three times that it might leave me. 9 And He has said to me, "**My grace is sufficient for you, for power is perfected in weakness.**" Most gladly, therefore, I will rather boast about my weaknesses, so that the power of Christ may dwell in me.

Hebrews 1:6 And when He again brings the firstborn into the world, He says, "AND LET ALL THE ANGELS OF GOD WORSHIP HIM."

Revelation 5:12 saying with a loud voice, "Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power and riches and wisdom and might and honor and glory and blessing."

50. As the object of faith.

Psalm 2:12 Do homage to the Son, that He not become angry, and you perish *in* the way, For His wrath may soon be kindled. How blessed are all who take refuge in Him!

1 Peter 2:6 For *this* is contained in Scripture: "BEHOLD, I LAY IN ZION A CHOICE STONE, A PRECIOUS CORNER *stone*, AND HE WHO BELIEVES IN HIM WILL NOT BE DISAPPOINTED."

Jeremiah 17:5–7 Thus says the LORD, "Cursed is the man who trusts in mankind And makes flesh his strength, And whose heart turns away from the LORD. 6 "For he will be like a bush in the desert And will not see when prosperity comes, But will live in stony wastes in the wilderness, A land of salt without inhabitant. 7 "Blessed is the man who trusts in the LORD And whose trust is the LORD.

John 14:1 "**Do not let your heart be troubled; believe in God, believe also in Me.**

51. As God, he redeems and purifies the Church to himself.

Revelation 5:9 And they sang a new song, saying, "Worthy are You to take the book and to break its seals; for You were slain, and purchased for God with Your blood *men* from every tribe and tongue and people and nation.

Titus 2:14 who gave Himself for us to redeem us from every lawless deed, and to purify for Himself a people for His own possession, zealous for good deeds.

52. As God, he presents the Church to himself.

Ephesians 5:27 that He might present to Himself the church in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she would be holy and blameless.

Jude 24–25 Now to Him who is able to keep you from stumbling, and to make you stand in the presence of His glory blameless with great joy, 25 to the only God our Savior, through Jesus Christ our Lord, *be* glory, majesty, dominion and authority, before all time and now and forever. Amen.

53. Saints live to him as God.

Romans 6:11 Even so consider yourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

Galatians 2:19 “For through the Law I died to the Law, so that I might live to God.

2 Corinthians 5:15 and He died for all, so that they who live might no longer live for themselves, but for Him who died and rose again on their behalf.

54. Acknowledged by his Apostles.

John 20:28–29 Thomas answered and said to Him, “My Lord and my God!” 29 Jesus *said to him, “**Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed *are* they who did not see, and yet believed.**”

55. Acknowledged by the Old Testament saints.

Genesis 17:1 Now when Abram was ninety-nine years old, the LORD appeared to Abram and said to him,
“I am God Almighty;
Walk before Me, and be blameless.

Genesis 48:15–16 He blessed Joseph, and said,
“The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked,
The God who has been my shepherd all my life to this day,
16 The angel who has redeemed me from all evil,
Bless the lads;
And may my name live on in them,
And the names of my fathers Abraham and Isaac;
And may they grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.”

Genesis 32:24–30 Then Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until daybreak. 25 When he saw that he had not prevailed against him, he touched the socket of his thigh; so the socket of Jacob’s thigh was dislocated while he wrestled with him. 26 Then he said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” But he said, “I will not let you go unless you bless me.” 27 So he said to him, “What is your name?” And he said, “Jacob.” 28 He said, “Your name shall no longer be Jacob, but Israel; for you have striven with God and with men and have prevailed.” 29 Then Jacob asked him and said, “Please tell me your name.” But he said, “Why is it that you ask my name?” And he blessed him there. 30 So Jacob named the place Peniel, for *he said*, “I have seen God face to face, yet my life has been preserved.”

Hosea 12:3-5 In the womb he took his brother by the heel,
And in his maturity he contended with God.

4 Yes, he wrestled with the angel and prevailed;
He wept and sought His favor.

He found Him at Bethel
And there He spoke with us,

5 Even the LORD, the God of hosts,
The LORD is His name.

Judges 6:22-24 When Gideon saw that he was the angel of the LORD, he said, "Alas, O Lord GOD! For now I have seen the angel of the LORD face to face." 23 The LORD said to him, "Peace to you, do not fear; you shall not die." 24 Then Gideon built an altar there to the LORD and named it The LORD is Peace. To this day it is still in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

Judges 13:21-22 Now the angel of the LORD did not appear to Manoah or his wife again. Then Manoah knew that he was the angel of the LORD. 22 So Manoah said to his wife, "We will surely die, for we have seen God."

Job 19:25-27

25 "As for me, I know that my Redeemer lives,
And at the last He will take His stand on the earth.

26 "Even after my skin is destroyed,
Yet from my flesh I shall see God;

27 Whom I myself shall behold,
And whom my eyes will see and not another.
My heart faints within me!

Anyone who denies that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh is that spirit of antichrist:

1 John 4:1-3 Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from God, because many false prophets have gone out into the world. 2 By this you know the Spirit of God: every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God; 3 and every spirit that does not confess Jesus is not from God; this is the spirit of the antichrist, of which you have heard that it is coming, and now it is already in the world.

As I mentioned earlier, Jesus claimed to be none other than God in human flesh. And no other great world religious leader ever claimed to be God.

Chapter 13: Was Jesus Christ A Liar?

Lunatic, Liar, or Lord? Jesus clearly claimed to be God in human flesh. His claim is either true or false. If you reject His claim, then you cannot say He was a good teacher because if the claim is false then no good teacher would make such a false claim. There are only three possible responses to His claim:

1. If His claim is false but He believes the claim is true then He is a **lunatic**.
2. If His claim is false and He knows it is false then He is a **liar**.
3. If His claim is true then He is the **Lord** God in human flesh and He must be worshiped.

C. S. Lewis wrote:

“A man who was merely a man and said the sort of things Jesus said would not be a great moral teacher. He would either be a lunatic, on a level with the man who says he is a poached egg, or else he would be the Devil of Hell. You must make your choice. Either this man was, and is, the Son of God: or else a madman or something worse. You can shut Him up for a fool; you can spit at Him and kill Him as a demon; or you can fall at His feet and call Him Lord and God. But let us not come with any patronizing nonsense about His being a great human teacher. **He has not left that open to us. He did not intend to.**”

Chapter 14: What Is the Meat Of The Word?

Milk of the Word defined

Hebrews 5:12 For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the **elementary principles** of the oracles of God, and you have come to need **milk** and not solid food.

Hebrews 6:1–2 Therefore leaving the elementary teaching about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying again a foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God, of instruction about washings and laying on of hands, and the resurrection of the dead and eternal judgment.

Meat (solid food) of the Word defined

Hebrews 5:13–14 For everyone who partakes *only* of milk is not accustomed to **the word of righteousness**, for he is an infant. 14 But **solid food** is for the mature, who because of practice have their senses trained to discern good and evil.

Most modern translations of the Bible use the words *solid food* to refer to the *teaching about righteousness*. The King James translation of the Bible uses the words *strong meat* to describe the same teaching. For years Christians have referred to the *milk of the word* and the *meat of the word*. **To really get into the meat of the word you need to become accustomed to the **word of righteousness**. Which is the same as understanding the *exchanged life* and the difference between Law and Grace. Understanding the old covenant and the new covenant. Understanding that Christians are justified under the new covenant (Grace) and not under the old covenant (Law).**

Chapter 15: Law And Grace

Law and Grace also known as the Old Covenant and the New Covenant



<i>Old Testament</i>		<i>New Testament</i>		
Preparation	Manifestation	Propagation	Explanation	Consummation
Entire Old Testament	Gospels	Acts	Epistles	Revelation
Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, Ruth, 1 Samuel, 2 Samuel, 1 Kings, 2 Kings, 1 Chronicles, 2 Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah, Esther, Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Songs, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Lamentations, Ezekiel, Daniel, Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi	Matthew Mark Luke John	Acts	Romans 1 Corinthians 2 Corinthians Galatians Ephesians Philippians Colossians 1 Thessalonians 2 Thessalonians 1 Timothy 2 Timothy Titus Philemon Hebrews James 1 Peter 2 Peter 1 John 2 John 3 John Jude	Revelation

Old Covenant and New Covenant

The old covenant is not the Old Testament. The new covenant is not the New Testament. The Old Testament refers to the 39 books in the Bible from Genesis to Malachi. The New Testament refers to the 27 books in the Bible from Matthew to Revelation.

The old covenant refers to the Law as given to Moses. That is, the moral, civil and ceremonial laws; all of which are found in the Old Testament.

The new covenant refers to the sacrificial death of Christ.

1 Corinthians 11:25 In the same way *He took* the cup also after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me."

Hebrews 8:6-13

6 But now He has obtained a more excellent ministry, by as much as He is also the mediator of a better covenant, which has been enacted on better promises.

7 For if that first *covenant* had been faultless, there would have been no occasion sought for a second.

8 For finding fault with them, He says,

"BEHOLD, DAYS ARE COMING, SAYS THE LORD,

WHEN I WILL EFFECT A NEW COVENANT

WITH THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL AND WITH THE HOUSE OF JUDAH;

9 NOT LIKE THE COVENANT WHICH I MADE WITH THEIR FATHERS

ON THE DAY WHEN I TOOK THEM BY THE HAND

TO LEAD THEM OUT OF THE LAND OF EGYPT;

FOR THEY DID NOT CONTINUE IN MY COVENANT,

AND I DID NOT CARE FOR THEM, SAYS THE LORD.

10 "FOR THIS IS THE COVENANT THAT I WILL MAKE WITH THE HOUSE OF ISRAEL

AFTER THOSE DAYS, SAYS THE LORD:

I WILL PUT MY LAWS INTO THEIR MINDS,

AND I WILL WRITE THEM ON THEIR HEARTS.

AND I WILL BE THEIR GOD,

AND THEY SHALL BE MY PEOPLE.

11 "AND THEY SHALL NOT TEACH EVERYONE HIS FELLOW CITIZEN,

AND EVERYONE HIS BROTHER, SAYING, 'KNOW THE LORD,'

FOR ALL WILL KNOW ME,

FROM THE LEAST TO THE GREATEST OF THEM.

12 "FOR I WILL BE MERCIFUL TO THEIR INIQUITIES,

AND I WILL REMEMBER THEIR SINS NO MORE."

13 When He said, "A new *covenant*," He has made the first obsolete. But whatever is becoming obsolete and growing old is ready to disappear.

Hebrews 9:15 For this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant, so that, since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were *committed* under the first covenant, those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.

2 Corinthians 3:14–16 But their minds were hardened; for until this very day at the reading of the old covenant the same veil remains unlifted, because it is removed in Christ. 15 But to this day whenever Moses is read, a veil lies over their heart; 16 but whenever a person turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away.

What is the Law?

The Moral Law (The Ten Commandments)

Exodus 20:1 – 26

- 1 Then God spoke all these words, saying,
- 2 "I am the Lord your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.
- 3 "You shall have no other gods before Me.
- 4 "You shall not make for yourself an idol, or any likeness of what is in heaven above or on the earth beneath or in the water under the earth.
- 5 "You shall not worship them or serve them; for I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children, on the third and the fourth generations of those who hate Me,
- 6 but showing lovingkindness to thousands, to those who love Me and keep My commandments.
- 7 "You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain, for the Lord will not leave him unpunished who takes His name in vain.
- 8 "Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.
- 9 "Six days you shall labor and do all your work,
- 10 but the seventh day is a sabbath of the Lord your God; in it you shall not do any work, you or your son or your daughter, your male or your female servant or your cattle or your sojourner who stays with you.
- 11 "For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day; therefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day and made it holy.
- 12 "Honor your father and your mother, that your days may be prolonged in the land which the Lord your God gives you.
- 13 "You shall not murder.
- 14 "You shall not commit adultery.
- 15 "You shall not steal.
- 16 "You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.
- 17 "You shall not covet your neighbor's house; you shall not covet your neighbor's wife or his male servant or his female servant or his ox or his donkey or anything that belongs to your neighbor."
- 18 All the people perceived the thunder and the lightning flashes and the sound of the trumpet and the mountain smoking; and when the people saw it, they trembled and stood at a distance.
- 19 Then they said to Moses, "Speak to us yourself and we will listen; but let not God speak to us, or we will die."
- 20 Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid; for God has come in order to test you, and in order that the fear of Him may remain with you, so that you may not sin."
- 21 So the people stood at a distance, while Moses approached the thick cloud where God was.

22 Then the Lord said to Moses, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, 'You yourselves have seen that I have spoken to you from heaven.

23 'You shall not make other gods besides Me; gods of silver or gods of gold, you shall not make for yourselves.

24 'You shall make an altar of earth for Me, and you shall sacrifice on it your burnt offerings and your peace offerings, your sheep and your oxen; in every place where I cause My name to be remembered, I will come to you and bless you.

25 'If you make an altar of stone for Me, you shall not build it of cut stones, for if you wield your tool on it, you will profane it.

26 'And you shall not go up by steps to My altar, so that your nakedness will not be exposed on it.'

The Civil Law Exodus 21:1 – 24:18

The Ceremonial Law Exodus 25:1 – 40:38

The Law is also referred to as the old covenant. Even though there are several other covenants mentioned in the Bible when the old covenant is mentioned it is understood to be referring to the Law. The old covenant is also referred to as the first covenant in Hebrews 8:7, 8:13, 9:1, 9:15, 9:18

Hebrews 8:7 For if that first *covenant* had been faultless, there would have been no occasion sought for a second.

Hebrews 8:13 When He said, "A new *covenant*," He has made the first obsolete. But whatever is becoming obsolete and growing old is ready to disappear.

Hebrews 9:1 Now even the first *covenant* had regulations of divine worship and the earthly sanctuary.

Hebrews 9:15–18 For this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant, so that, since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were *committed* under the first covenant, those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance. 16 For where a covenant is, there must of necessity be the death of the one who made it. 17 For a covenant is valid *only* when men are dead, for it is never in force while the one who made it lives. 18 Therefore even the first *covenant* was not inaugurated without blood.

Purpose of the Law

To lead us to Christ:

Galatians 3:24 Therefore the Law has become our tutor **to lead us to Christ**, so that we may be justified by faith.

Romans 6:14 **For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law but under grace.**

Romans 10:4 **For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes.**

The Law is like a mirror: It shows you that your face is dirty, but it cannot clean your face.

What is Grace?

Christians are saved by grace alone through faith alone in Christ alone.

Grace = God's Riches At Christ's Expense

Grace = God's gift of salvation through Christ's death on the cross and His resurrection from the dead.

Ephesians 2:8–9 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, *it is* the gift of God; 9 not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.

John 1:14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Salvation is by grace and not by obedience to the Law

Galatians 3:10–14 For as many as are of the works of the Law are under a curse; for it is written, "CURSED IS EVERYONE WHO DOES NOT ABIDE BY ALL THINGS WRITTEN IN THE BOOK OF THE LAW, TO PERFORM THEM." 11 Now that no one is justified by the Law before God is evident; for, "THE RIGHTEOUS MAN SHALL LIVE BY FAITH." 12 However, the Law is not of faith; on the contrary, "HE WHO PRACTICES THEM SHALL LIVE BY THEM." 13 Christ redeemed us from the curse of the Law, having become a curse for us—for it is written, "CURSED IS EVERYONE WHO HANGS ON A TREE"— 14 in order that in Christ Jesus the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles, so that we would receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

Romans 1:16–17 For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek. 17 For in it *the* righteousness of God is revealed from faith to faith; as it is written, "BUT THE RIGHTEOUS *man* SHALL LIVE BY FAITH."

Romans 5:1 Therefore, having been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ,

James 2:10 For whoever keeps the whole law and yet stumbles in one *point*, he has become guilty of all.

Salvation is not through attempts to be obedient to your own laws

Colossians 2:20–23 If you have died with Christ to the elementary principles of the world, why, as if you were living in the world, do you submit yourself to decrees, such as, 21 "Do not handle, do not taste, do not touch!" 22 (which all *refer to* things destined to perish with use)—in accordance with the commandments and teachings of men? 23 These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religion and self-abasement and severe treatment of the body, **but are of no value against fleshly indulgence.**

When I attempted to explain to a pastor, Pastor Dan, that salvation is not through attempts to be obedient to your own laws he tried to contradict the verse; he did not realize what he was doing. He told me the story of how a guy held his hand over a burning candle and didn't flinch, even when it burned his flesh. Pastor Dan mistakenly thought he was giving an example of tremendous self-control even to the point of burning your own flesh. Since Pastor Dan was in a position of authority, I did not feel comfortable pointing out what I am about to explain. That man holding his hand over a burning candle to the point of burning his flesh was NOT demonstrating self-control; it was quite the opposite. That man was full of pride; he wanted to show how tough he was; he was certainly not being led by the Spirit. He was full of pride and the pride controlled him; that is the exact opposite of being filled by the Spirit which causes you to be controlled by the Spirit. So, sorry, Pastor Dan, but your story does not contradict the Bible verse, in fact, it proves the verse and what I was saying about the verse. He did not realize that I knew about that story and who the guy was; he was G. Gordon Liddy, one of the Watergate co-conspirators. There is a similar scene in the movie *Lawrence of Arabia*.

Here is a quote from Jodi Rubin's blog:

<https://jodirubin.wordpress.com/2012/10/08/the-trick-is-not-not-minding/>

G. Gordon Liddy famously performed this feat, as was captured in the book *All The President's Men*, when Deep Throat says to Bob Woodward: I was at a party once, and, uh, Liddy put his hand over a candle, and he kept it there. He kept it right in the flame until his flesh was burned. Somebody said, "What's the trick?" And Liddy said, "The trick is not minding."

Some people think God accepts them only if they keep certain laws and that is just NOT true; God only accepts people because of what He has done through the sacrifice of Jesus on the cross. But some people select some of God's laws or make up their own "laws", so they can tell themselves God is pleased with me because I "follow" my own set of rules. A funny way to refer to these foolish sets of "laws" are the "Filthy Five" or "Sinful Seven" or "Nasty Nine" or the "Dirty Dozen".

There are many different foolish sets of "laws" or principles that people attempt to follow. Here are just a few examples:

- Filthy Five:

1. Don't smoke; 2. Don't dance; 3. Don't lust; 4. Don't eat pork; and 5. Don't listen to rock music.

- Sinful Seven:

1. Don't steal; 2. Don't get divorced; 3. Don't work on Sunday; 4. Don't eat beef; 5. Don't watch non-Christian television shows; 6. Don't tell dirty jokes; and 7. Don't forget to pay tithes on Sunday.

- Nasty Nine:

1. Don't steal; 2. Don't lie; 3. Don't work on Sunday; 4. Don't eat bananas;
5. Don't watch non-Christian movies; 6. Don't speak to unmarried men; 7. Don't touch sick people,
8. Don't smoke; and 9. Don't lust.

- Dirty Dozen:

1. Don't steal; 2. Don't lie; 3. Don't work on Sunday; 4. Don't eat meat;
5. Don't watch non-Christian movies; 6. Don't speak to unmarried men; 7. Don't touch sick people,
8. Don't smoke; 9. Don't lust; 10. Don't dance; 11. Don't ride bicycles if you are a woman;
- and 12. Don't have sex outside of marriage.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Always remember it is foolishness to think such sets of “laws” please God. **They do not please God.** You are made acceptable to God only if you accept and trust in what Jesus Christ has done for you and not what you have done for Jesus Christ.

Ask yourself if there are any laws you think you need to keep to be acceptable to God. If you answer “yes” then you are not depending on the work of Jesus Christ **alone** to be made acceptable to God.

Remember this: God makes you acceptable to Himself through His works and not your works. That is precisely what God is telling you in Hebrews 4:9-10. The true Sabbath rest is when you give up trying to do your own works or keeping a set of laws to be acceptable to God. Sabbath rest does NOT mean making sure you do not do labor on Sunday. True Sabbath rest means you are resting from your own works to be saved.

Memorize this: *I am saved by grace alone through faith alone in Jesus Christ alone.*

Rest from your works

Hebrews 4:9–10 So there remains a Sabbath rest for the people of God. 10 For **the one who has entered His rest has himself also rested from his works**, as God did from His.

Law in terms of New Testament use has a variety of meanings. It is used to mean everything from the entire Old Testament to just certain portions of the Old Testament. For the purposes of discussing Law and Grace, the Law means “the Mosaic administration dispensed at Sinai” -- which is part of the *New Bible Dictionary's* entry for Law.

Chapter 16: Rest From Your Works

I really want you to get this one point. Please, give up trying to make yourself acceptable to God based on your own good works; it cannot be done that way. All you need to do is believe in the Lord Jesus Christ for your acceptance with God; He did the work for you. You merely need to trust in the finished work of Jesus Christ.

Hebrews 4:9–10 So there remains a Sabbath rest for the people of God. 10 For the one who has entered His rest has himself also rested from his works, as God did from His.

John 6:28–29 28 Therefore they said to Him, “What shall we do, so that we may work the works of God?” 29 Jesus answered and said to them, “This is the work of God, that you believe in Him whom He has sent.”

Ephesians 2:8–9 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, *it is* the gift of God; 9 not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.

Galatians 3:3 Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now being perfected by the flesh?

If you can read the above four passages and if you are a born-again believer and you still think you must keep asking for forgiveness over and over again then to put it bluntly, you are a fool. You are trying to attain your goal by your own effort i.e., by your works. If you are feeling very uncomfortable right now that indicates, you may be choking on the meat of the word. The truth is you may not be ready for the meat of the word. You may only be able to handle the milk of the word. You may still be an infant and you may need to mature more before you understand. It means the law has not fulfilled its purpose in your life.

Chapter 17: Christians Are No Longer Under The Law

Christians are no longer under the Law

When a Christian says they are “no longer under the Law” they are saying they are no longer trying to make themselves acceptable to God by performing the works of the Law; two key verses related to this are:

Romans 6:14 For sin shall not be master over you, for you are **not under law but under grace.**

Galatians 5:18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law.

Where is the Law in relation to Christians?

The Law is nailed to the cross.

Colossians 2:14 having canceled out the certificate of debt consisting of decrees against us, which was hostile to us; and He has taken it out of the way, **having nailed it to the cross.**

The truth will set you free from bondage to sin under the Law.

John 1:14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

John 8:32 **and you will know the truth, and the truth will make you free.”**

The Glory of the New Covenant

2 Corinthians 3:6–11 who also made us adequate *as* servants of a new covenant, not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life. 7 But if the ministry of death, in letters engraved on stones, came with glory, so that the sons of Israel could not look intently at the face of Moses because of the glory of his face, fading *as* it was, 8 how will the ministry of the Spirit fail to be even more with glory? 9 For if the ministry of condemnation has glory, much more does the ministry of righteousness abound in glory. 10 For indeed what had glory, in this case has no glory because of the glory that surpasses *it*. 11 For if that which fades away *was* with glory, much more that which remains *is* in glory.

Chapter 18: Are You As Righteous As Jesus Christ?

The Choke Test

Infants need milk. If you give infants meat too soon, they will choke on it.

Are you ready to take the 'choke test'?

Are you as righteous as Jesus Christ?

2 Corinthians 5:21 He made Him who knew no sin *to be* sin on our behalf, so that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

Philippians 3:8–9 More than that, I count all things to be loss in view of the surpassing value of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them but rubbish so that I may gain Christ, 9 and may be found in Him, not having a righteousness of my own derived from *the* Law, but that which is through faith in Christ, the righteousness which *comes* from God on the basis of faith,

Galatians 2:20–21 "I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the *life* which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 "I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness *comes* through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."

Which of your sins were forgiven at the cross?

Forgiveness of all your sins

1 Peter 3:18 For Christ also died for sins **once for all**, *the* just for *the* unjust, so that He might bring us to God, having been put to death in the flesh, but made alive in the spirit;

John 1:29 The next day he *saw* Jesus coming to him and *said*, "Behold, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!"

Righteousness

2 Corinthians 5:21 He made Him who knew no sin *to be* sin on our behalf, so that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

Romans 5:17–19 For if by the transgression of the one, death reigned through the one, much more those who receive the abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness will reign in life through the One, Jesus Christ. 18 So then as through one transgression there resulted condemnation to all men, even so through one act of righteousness there resulted justification of life to all men. 19 For as through the one man's disobedience the many were made sinners, even so through the obedience of the One the many will be made righteous.

Ephesians 1:7 In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace

Hebrews 8:12–13 “FOR I WILL BE MERCIFUL TO THEIR INIQUITIES, AND I WILL REMEMBER THEIR SINS NO MORE.” 13 When He said, “A new *covenant*,” He has made the first obsolete. But whatever is becoming obsolete and growing old is ready to disappear.

Hebrews 9:22 And according to the Law, *one may almost say*, all things are cleansed with blood, and without shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.

Hebrews 10:11–18

11 Every priest stands daily ministering and offering time after time the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins;

12 but He, having offered one sacrifice for sins for all time, SAT DOWN AT THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD,

13 waiting from that time onward UNTIL HIS ENEMIES BE MADE A FOOTSTOOL FOR HIS FEET.

14 For by one offering He has perfected for all time those who are sanctified.

15 And the Holy Spirit also testifies to us; for after saying,

16 “THIS IS THE COVENANT THAT I WILL MAKE WITH THEM

AFTER THOSE DAYS, SAYS THE LORD:

I WILL PUT MY LAWS UPON THEIR HEART,
AND ON THEIR MIND I WILL WRITE THEM,”

He then says,

17 “AND THEIR SINS AND THEIR LAWLESS DEEDS

I WILL REMEMBER NO MORE.”

18 Now where there is forgiveness of these things, there is no longer *any* offering for sin.

Chapter 19: Grace Is Not A License To Sin

The phrase "no longer under the law" does not mean the law has no value. The phrase simply means I am not justified by the law; instead, I am justified by God's grace.

1. People are sinning quite well without a license.

2. The power of sin is the law:

1 Corinthians 15:56 The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law;

3. Law entices man to sin:

Romans 7:5–8 For while we were in the flesh, the sinful passions, which were *aroused* by the Law, were at work in the members of our body to bear fruit for death. 6 But now we have been released from the Law, having died to that by which we were bound, so that we serve in newness of the Spirit and not in oldness of the letter. 7 What shall we say then? Is the Law sin? May it never be! On the contrary, I would not have come to know sin except through the Law; for I would not have known about coveting if the Law had not said, "YOU SHALL NOT COVET." 8 But sin, taking opportunity through the commandment, produced in me coveting of every kind; for apart from the Law sin *is* dead.

4. Laws or principles we create lack any value in restraining sensual indulgence:

Colossians 2:23 These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religion and self-abasement and severe treatment of the body, **but are of no value against fleshly indulgence.**

5. The Bible teaches Grace is not a license to sin:

Romans 6:14–15 For sin shall not be master over you, for you are not under law but under grace. 15 What then? **Shall we sin because we are not under law but under grace? May it never be!**

Galatians 5:13 For you were called to freedom, brethren; **only do not turn your freedom into an opportunity for the flesh**, but through love serve one another.

6. It is Grace that teaches us to say no to ungodliness, not the law:

Titus 2:11–15 For the grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation to all men, 12 instructing us to deny ungodliness and worldly desires and to live sensibly, righteously and godly in the present age, 13 looking for the blessed hope and the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior, Christ Jesus, 14 who gave Himself for us to redeem us from every lawless deed, and to purify for Himself a people for His own possession, zealous for good deeds. 15 These things speak and exhort and reprove with all authority. Let no one disregard you.

7. Do not let anyone disregard you for teaching these things:

Titus 2:15 These things speak and exhort and reprove with all authority. Let no one disregard you.

Chapter 20: Legalism - - Do Not Mix Law And Grace

You cannot mix Law and Grace to make yourself acceptable to God. Simply put, if you say you are a Christian and believe that you must keep a set of rules/laws to make yourself acceptable to God then you are a legalist. You are trying to mix Law and Grace. You do not realize that in doing so you destroy the essential nature of each. Law and Grace are mutually exclusive. If you try to add a few laws to follow to make yourself acceptable to God, then you are trying to earn your salvation; that destroys Grace because now your salvation is no longer a gift from God. If you try to add Grace to the Law, then you have destroyed the Law. You cannot just select a few laws to follow; the Law does not allow that:

Galatians 3:10 For as many as are of the works of the Law are under a curse; for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who does not abide by all things written in the book of the law, to perform them."

Legalism is when a person believes that strictly following God's Law or a denomination's code of conduct, or their personal list of "dos and don'ts", or their personal moral code, will make them acceptable to God.

Some people come up with a selection of only some of God's Law, just the parts they think they can keep, and then think they can make themselves acceptable to God by following just that subset of God's Law.

Some people come up with their own set of "dos and don'ts" such as:

- Dirty Dozen:
 1. Don't steal; 2. Don't lie; 3. Don't work on Sunday; 4. Don't eat meat;
 5. Don't watch non-Christian movies; 6. Don't speak to unmarried men; 7. Don't touch sick people,
 8. Don't smoke; 9. Don't lust; 10. Don't dance; 11. Don't ride bicycles if you are a woman;
 - and 12. Don't have sex outside of marriage.

Please reread the chapter titled *Law and Grace* to discovery more ridiculous self-created lists of "dos and don'ts" such as: the Filthy Five, the Sinful Seven, and the Nasty Nine.

Galatians Outline by Dr. John Gerstner

The book of Galatians is the apostle Paul's tremendous defense of God's Grace. He clearly explains how legalism is a false gospel and how it leads people to hell. I highly recommend watching Dr. John Gerstner's videos on the book of Galatians.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N3IVXeeyt90&list=PLhORVCVz3B2bpQ_PEpeVcFq_UvoQUEM0p&index=1

Salutation (Ch. 1:1 to 5)

Crisis: Sudden substitution of a false gospel (Ch. 1:6 to 10)

Solution: By apostolic authority and argument (Ch. 1:11 to 6:10)

A. Apostolic authority (Ch. 1:11 to 2:21)

B. Apostolic arguments (Ch. 3:1 to 6:10)

1. The Galatians were saved by faith (Ch. 3:1 to 2)
2. The Galatians were sanctified by faith (Ch. 3:3 to 5)
3. Abraham was saved by faith (Ch. 3:6 to 7)
4. Abraham's descendants were to be saved by faith (Ch. 3:8 to 9)
5. Law misunderstood as way of salvation only (Ch. 3:10 to 14)
6. Law as covenant was not to supplant but to show need of Grace (Ch. 3:15 to 5:12)
7. Grace does not free from Law but fulfills the Law (Ch. 5:13 to 6:10)

Conclusion: Warnings and encouragements (Ch. 6:11 to 18)

Galatians Outline by Dr. John Gerstner with the entire book of Galatians

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N3IVXeeyt90&list=PLhORVCVz3B2bpQ_PeVcFq_UvoQUEM0p&index=1

Salutation (Ch. 1:1 to 5)

Galatians 1:1–5 Paul, an apostle (not sent from men nor through the agency of man, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised Him from the dead), 2 and all the brethren who are with me, To the churches of Galatia: 3 Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ, 4 who gave Himself for our sins so that He might rescue us from this present evil age, according to the will of our God and Father, 5 to whom be the glory forevermore. Amen.

Crisis: Sudden substitution of a false gospel (Ch. 1:6 to 10)

Galatians 1:6–10 I am amazed that you are so quickly deserting Him who called you by the grace of Christ, for a different gospel; 7 which is really not another; only there are some who are disturbing you and want to distort the gospel of Christ. 8 But even if we, or an angel from heaven, should preach to you a gospel contrary to what we have preached to you, he is to be accursed! 9 As we have said before, so I say again now, if any man is preaching to you a gospel contrary to what you received, he is to be accursed! 10 For am I now seeking the favor of men, or of God? Or am I striving to please men? If I were still trying to please men, I would not be a bond-servant of Christ.

Solution: By apostolic authority and argument (Ch. 1:11 to 6:10)

A. Apostolic authority (Ch. 1:11 to 2:21)

Galatians 1:11–2:21 For I would have you know, brethren, that the gospel which was preached by me is not according to man. 12 For I neither received it from man, nor was I taught it, but I received it through a revelation of Jesus Christ. 13 For you have heard of my former manner of life in Judaism, how I used to persecute the church of God beyond measure and tried to destroy it; 14 and I was advancing in Judaism beyond many of my contemporaries among my countrymen, being more extremely zealous for my ancestral traditions. 15 But when God, who had set me apart even from my mother's womb and called me through His grace, was pleased 16 to reveal His Son in me so that I might preach Him among the Gentiles, I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, 17 nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me; but I went away to Arabia, and returned once more to Damascus. 18 Then three years later I went up to Jerusalem to become acquainted with Cephas, and stayed with him fifteen days. 19 But I did not see any other of the apostles except James, the Lord's brother. 20 (Now in what I am writing to you, I assure you before God that I am not lying.) 21 Then I went into the regions of Syria and Cilicia. 22 I was still unknown by sight to the churches of Judea which were in Christ; 23 but only, they kept hearing, "He who once persecuted us is now preaching the faith which he once tried to destroy." 24 And they were glorifying God because of me.

Chapter 2

1 Then after an interval of fourteen years I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, taking Titus along also. 2 It was because of a revelation that I went up; and I submitted to them the gospel which I preach among the Gentiles, but I did so in private to those who were of reputation, for fear that I might be running, or had run, in vain. 3 But not even Titus, who was with me, though he was a Greek, was compelled to be circumcised. 4 **But it was because of the false brethren secretly brought in, who had sneaked in to spy out our liberty which we have in Christ Jesus, in order to bring us into bondage.** 5 But we did not yield in subjection to them for even an hour, so that the truth of the gospel would remain with you. 6 But from those who were of high reputation (what they were makes no difference to me; God shows no partiality)—well, those who were of reputation contributed nothing to me. 7 But on the contrary, seeing that I had been entrusted with the gospel to the uncircumcised, just as Peter had been to the circumcised

8 (for He who effectually worked for Peter in his apostleship to the circumcised effectually worked for me also to the Gentiles), 9 and recognizing the grace that had been given to me, James and Cephas and John, who were reputed to be pillars, gave to me and Barnabas the right hand of fellowship, so that we might go to the Gentiles and they to the circumcised. 10 They only asked us to remember the poor—the very thing I also was eager to do. 11 **But when Cephas came to Antioch, I opposed him to his face, because he stood condemned.** 12 For prior to the coming of certain men from James, he used to eat with the Gentiles; but when they came, he began to withdraw and hold himself aloof, fearing the party of the circumcision. 13 The rest of the Jews joined him in hypocrisy, with the result that even Barnabas was carried away by their hypocrisy. 14 **But when I saw that they were not straightforward about the truth of the gospel, I said to Cephas in the presence of all, "If you, being a Jew, live like the Gentiles and not like the Jews, how is it that you compel the Gentiles to live like Jews?"** 15 **"We are Jews by nature and not sinners from among the Gentiles;** 16 **nevertheless knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the Law but through faith in Christ Jesus, even we have believed in Christ Jesus, so that we may be justified by faith in Christ and not by the works of the Law; since by the works of the Law no flesh will be justified.** 17 **"But if, while seeking to be justified in Christ, we ourselves have also been found sinners, is Christ then a minister of sin? May it never be!** 18 **"For if I rebuild what I have once destroyed, I prove myself to be a transgressor. 19 "For through the Law I died to the Law, so that I might live to God. 20 "I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 "I do not nullify the grace of God, for **if righteousness comes through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."****

B. Apostolic arguments (Ch. 3:1 to 6:10)

1. The Galatians were saved by faith (Ch. 3:1 to 2)

Galatians 3:1–2 **You foolish Galatians, who has bewitched you, before whose eyes Jesus Christ was publicly portrayed as crucified? 2 This is the only thing I want to find out from you: **did you receive the Spirit by the works of the Law, or by hearing with faith?****

2. The Galatians were sanctified by faith (Ch. 3:3 to 5)

Galatians 3:3–5 **Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now being perfected by the flesh? 4 Did you suffer so many things in vain—if indeed it was in vain? 5 So then, does He who provides you with the Spirit and works miracles among you, do it by the works of the Law, or by hearing with faith?**

3. Abraham was saved by faith (Ch. 3:6 to 7)

Galatians 3:6-7 Even so Abraham believed God, and it was reckoned to him as righteousness. 7 Therefore, be sure that it is those who are of faith who are sons of Abraham.

If someone tries to teach you to mix Law and Grace, then they are wrong; they are leading you to Hell. If you mix Law and Grace, then you are wrong; you will go to Hell. Here are just a few verses to prove to you that true born-again Christians are saved from Hell by faith alone.

True born-again Christians are saved by grace alone through faith alone in Christ alone.

Ephesians 2:8-9

8 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, it is the gift of God; 9 not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.

Galatians 3:6 Even so Abraham believed God, and it was reckoned to him as righteousness.

Romans 4:3 For what does the Scripture say? "Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness."

James 2:23 and the Scripture was fulfilled which says, "AND ABRAHAM BELIEVED GOD, AND IT WAS RECKONED TO HIM AS RIGHTEOUSNESS," and he was called the friend of God.

Here is the verse in the Old Testament where Abraham is saved:

Genesis 15:6 Then he believed in the Lord; and He reckoned it to him as righteousness.

4. Abraham's descendants were to be saved by faith (Ch. 3:8 to 9)

Galatians 3:8-9 The Scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel beforehand to Abraham, saying, "All the nations will be blessed in you." 9 So then those who are of faith are blessed with Abraham, the believer.

5. Law misunderstood as way of salvation only (Ch. 3:10 to 14)

Galatians 3:10-14 For as many as are of the works of the Law are under a curse; for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who does not abide by all things written in the book of the law, to perform them." 11 Now that no one is justified by the Law before God is evident; for, "The righteous man shall live by faith." 12 However, the Law is not of faith; on the contrary, "He who practices them shall live by them." 13 Christ redeemed us from the curse of the Law, having become a curse for us—for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree"— 14 in order that in Christ Jesus the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles, so that we would receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

6. Law as covenant was not to supplant but to show need of Grace (Ch. 3:15 to 5:12)

Galatians 3:15–5:12 Brethren, I speak in terms of human relations: even though it is only a man's covenant, yet when it has been ratified, no one sets it aside or adds conditions to it. 16 Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. He does not say, "And to seeds," as referring to many, but rather to one, "And to your seed," that is, Christ. 17 What I am saying is this: the Law, which came four hundred and thirty years later, does not invalidate a covenant previously ratified by God, so as to nullify the promise. 18 For if the inheritance is based on law, it is no longer based on a promise; but God has granted it to Abraham by means of a promise. 19 Why the Law then? It was added because of transgressions, having been ordained through angels by the agency of a mediator, until the seed would come to whom the promise had been made. 20 Now a mediator is not for one party only; whereas God is only one. 21 Is the Law then contrary to the promises of God? May it never be! **For if a law had been given which was able to impart life, then righteousness would indeed have been based on law.** 22 But the Scripture has shut up everyone under sin, so that the promise by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe. 23 But before faith came, we were kept in custody under the law, being shut up to the faith which was later to be revealed. 24 **Therefore the Law has become our tutor to lead us to Christ, so that we may be justified by faith.** 25 **But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a tutor.** 26 For you are all sons of God through faith in Christ Jesus. 27 For all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. 28 There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Christ Jesus. 29 **And if you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham's descendants, heirs according to promise.**

Chapter 4

1 Now I say, as long as the heir is a child, he does not differ at all from a slave although he is owner of everything, 2 but he is under guardians and managers until the date set by the father. 3 So also we, while we were children, were held in bondage under the elemental things of the world. 4 But when the fullness of the time came, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the Law, 5 so that He might redeem those who were under the Law, that we might receive the adoption as sons. 6 Because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of His Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba! Father!" 7 Therefore you are no longer a slave, but a son; and if a son, then an heir through God. 8 However at that time, when you did not know God, you were slaves to those which by nature are no gods. 9 But now that you have come to know God, or rather to be known by God, how is it that you turn back again to the weak and worthless elemental things, to which you desire to be enslaved all over again? 10 You observe days and months and seasons and years. 11 I fear for you, that perhaps I have labored over you in vain. 12 I beg of you, brethren, become as I am, for I also have become as you are. You have done me no wrong; 13 but you know that it was because of a bodily illness that I preached the gospel to you the first time; 14 and that which was a trial to you in my bodily condition you did not despise or loathe, but you received me as an angel of God, as Christ Jesus Himself. 15 Where then is that sense of blessing you had? For I bear you witness that, if possible, you would have plucked out your eyes and given them to me. 16 **So have I become your enemy by telling you the truth?** 17 They eagerly seek you, not commendably, but they wish to shut you out so that you will seek them. 18 But it is good always to be eagerly sought in a commendable manner, and not only when I am present with you. 19 My children, with whom I am again in labor until Christ is formed in you— 20 but I could wish to be present with you now and to change my tone, for I am perplexed about you. 21 **Tell me, you who want to be under law, do you not listen to the**

law? 22 For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the bondwoman and one by the free woman. 23 But the son by the bondwoman was born according to the flesh, and the son by the free woman through the promise. 24 This is allegorically speaking, for these women are two covenants: one proceeding from Mount Sinai bearing children who are to be slaves; she is Hagar. 25 Now this Hagar is Mount Sinai in Arabia and corresponds to the present Jerusalem, for she is in slavery with her children. 26 But the Jerusalem above is free; she is our mother. 27 For it is written, "Rejoice, barren woman who does not bear; Break forth and shout, you who are not in labor; For more numerous are the children of the desolate Than of the one who has a husband." 28 And you brethren, like Isaac, are children of promise. 29 But as at that time he who was born according to the flesh persecuted him who was born according to the Spirit, so it is now also. 30 But what does the Scripture say? "Cast out the bondwoman and her son, For the son of the bondwoman shall not be an heir with the son of the free woman." 31 So then, brethren, we are not children of a bondwoman, but of the free woman.

Chapter 5

1 It was for freedom that Christ set us free; therefore keep standing firm and do not be subject again to a yoke of slavery. 2 Behold I, Paul, say to you that if you receive circumcision, Christ will be of no benefit to you. 3 And I testify again to every man who receives circumcision, that he is under obligation to keep the whole Law. 4 You have been severed from Christ, you who are seeking to be justified by law; you have fallen from grace. 5 For we through the Spirit, by faith, are waiting for the hope of righteousness. 6 For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision means anything, but faith working through love. 7 You were running well; who hindered you from obeying the truth? 8 This persuasion did not come from Him who calls you. 9 A little leaven leavens the whole lump of dough. 10 I have confidence in you in the Lord that you will adopt no other view; but the one who is disturbing you will bear his judgment, whoever he is. 11 But I, brethren, if I still preach circumcision, why am I still persecuted? Then the stumbling block of the cross has been abolished. 12 I wish that those who are troubling you would even mutilate themselves.

7. Grace does not free from Law but fulfills the Law (Ch. 5:13 to 6:10)

Galatians 5:13–6:10 For you were called to freedom, brethren; only do not turn your freedom into an opportunity for the flesh, but through love serve one another. 14 For the whole Law is fulfilled in one word, in the statement, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." 15 But if you bite and devour one another, take care that you are not consumed by one another. 16 But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not carry out the desire of the flesh. 17 For the flesh sets its desire against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; for these are in opposition to one another, so that you may not do the things that you please. 18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law. 19 Now the deeds of the flesh are evident, which are: immorality, impurity, sensuality, 20 idolatry, sorcery, enmities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, disputes, dissensions, factions, 21 envying, drunkenness, carousing, and things like these, of which I forewarn you, just as I have forewarned you, that **those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.** 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. 24 Now those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires. 25 **If we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit.** 26 Let us not become boastful, challenging one another, envying one another.

Chapter 6

1 Brethren, even if anyone is caught in any trespass, you who are spiritual, restore such a one in a spirit of gentleness; each one looking to yourself, so that you too will not be tempted. 2 Bear one another's burdens, and thereby fulfill the law of Christ. 3 For if anyone thinks he is something when he is nothing, he deceives himself. 4 But each one must examine his own work, and then he will have reason for boasting in regard to himself alone, and not in regard to another. 5 For each one will bear his own load. 6 The one who is taught the word is to share all good things with the one who teaches him. 7 Do not be deceived, God is not mocked; for whatever a man sows, this he will also reap. 8 For the one who sows to his own flesh will from the flesh reap corruption, but the one who sows to the Spirit will from the Spirit reap eternal life. 9 Let us not lose heart in doing good, for in due time we will reap if we do not grow weary. 10 So then, while we have opportunity, let us do good to all people, and especially to those who are of the household of the faith.

Conclusion: Warnings and encouragements (Ch. 6:11 to 18)

Galatians 6:11–18 See with what large letters I am writing to you with my own hand. 12 Those who desire to make a good showing in the flesh try to compel you to be circumcised, simply so that they will not be persecuted for the cross of Christ. 13 For those who are circumcised do not even keep the Law themselves, but they desire to have you circumcised so that they may boast in your flesh. 14 But may it never be that I would boast, except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world. 15 For neither is circumcision anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creation. 16 And those who will walk by this rule, peace and mercy be upon them, and upon the Israel of God. 17 From now on let no one cause trouble for me, for I bear on my body the brand-marks of Jesus. 18 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit, brethren. Amen.

A true born-again Christian is no longer under the Law but instead is to be led by the Spirit. When led by the Spirit, a Christian will do the will of God including obeying God's moral Law. However, true born-again Christians still have the old nature also known as the sin nature. At any time, a Christian can choose to be led by God's Holy Spirit, through their new nature, or be led by the flesh, the old sin nature. Therefore, a Christian should live in continuous moment-by-moment complete dependance upon the Lord Jesus Christ; in that way, the Christian will be led by the Spirit which results in complete obedience to the will of God, including God's moral Law. Therefore, when Grace is correctly understood and applied in a person's mind, instead of Grace being used as a license to sin, Grace leads a Christian to do the will of God, to be obedient to God.

When I explain this to Christians they will often ask "Well, how can I be led by the Spirit? or "What should I do to help me be led by the Spirit?" - - That is precisely what the next chapter is all about: *How to Walk in The Spirit*. In that chapter, please pay close attention to the *Four-Fold Interlock of a Life of Faith*; all of which is initiated by **the love of Christ** for us. One of God's attributes is love, so the critical success factor in being led by the Spirit is learning more and more about Jesus Christ's love for you. Wow, can you see how no human could have ever come up with this stuff? God's Word is truly God's Word; it is not some creation of humankind; it is truly, divine in nature.

Ephesians 3:19 and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.

Chapter 21: How To Walk In The Spirit

Just as you were saved by faith you must live by faith; that is what is meant in Romans 1:17 when Paul says “**from faith to faith**”:

Romans 1:16–17 For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek. 17 For in it *the* righteousness of God is revealed **from faith to faith**; as it is written, “**BUT THE RIGHTEOUS *man* SHALL LIVE BY FAITH.**”

Life no longer under the Law or How to Walk in The Spirit

The following phrases refer to the same concept:

- Live by the Spirit
- Walk in the Spirit
- Walk by faith
- Be Spirit filled
- Be controlled by the Spirit
- The dependent life
- Be obedient to God

The concept is found in the Bible in the following kind of verse:

Ephesians 3:19 and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.

When you are full of wine the wine controls you. When you are filled with the Spirit the Spirit controls you.

Ephesians 5:18 And do not get drunk with wine, for that is dissipation, but be filled with the Spirit,

Dissipation means: to spend or use wastefully or to indulge in extravagant or intemperate pleasure. Intemperate means: showing a lack of self-control.

Romans 6:11–13 Even so consider yourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus. 12 Therefore do not let sin reign in your mortal body so that you obey its lusts, 13 and do not go on presenting the members of your body to sin *as* instruments of unrighteousness; but present yourselves to God as those alive from the dead, and your members *as* instruments of righteousness to God.

Romans 8:2–4 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has set you free from the law of sin and of death. 3 For what the Law could not do, weak as it was through the flesh, God *did*: sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and *as an offering* for sin, He condemned sin in the flesh, 4 so that the requirement of the Law might be fulfilled in us, who do not walk according to the flesh but according to the Spirit.

Romans 8:12–13 So then, brethren, we are under obligation, not to the flesh, to live according to the flesh— 13 for if you are living according to the flesh, you must die; but if by the Spirit you are putting to death the deeds of the body, you will live.

Galatians 5:16–23 But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not carry out the desire of the flesh. 17 For the flesh sets its desire against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; for these are in opposition to one another, so that you may not do the things that you please. 18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law. 19 Now the deeds of the flesh are evident, which are: immorality, impurity, sensuality, 20 idolatry, sorcery, enmities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, disputes, dissensions, factions, 21 envying, drunkenness, carousing, and things like these, of which I forewarn you, just as I have forewarned you, that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

Ephesians 4:22–24 that, in reference to your former manner of life, you lay aside the old self, which is being corrupted in accordance with the lusts of deceit, 23 and that you be renewed in the spirit of your mind, 24 and put on the new self, which in *the likeness of* God has been created in righteousness and holiness of the truth.

Colossians 2:1–10 For I want you to know how great a struggle I have on your behalf and for those who are at Laodicea, and for all those who have not personally seen my face, 2 that their hearts may be encouraged, having been knit together in love, and *attaining* to all the wealth that comes from the full assurance of understanding, *resulting* in a true knowledge of God's mystery, *that is*, Christ *Himself*, 3 in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. 4 I say this so that no one will delude you with persuasive argument. 5 For even though I am absent in body, nevertheless I am with you in spirit, rejoicing to see your good discipline and the stability of your faith in Christ. 6 Therefore as you have received Christ Jesus the Lord, *so* walk in Him, 7 having been firmly rooted *and now* being built up in Him and established in your faith, just as you were instructed, *and overflowing* with gratitude. 8 See to it that no one takes you captive through philosophy and empty deception, according to the tradition of men, according to the elementary principles of the world, rather than according to Christ. 9 For in Him all the fullness of Deity dwells in bodily form, 10 and in Him you have been made complete, and He is the head over all rule and authority;

1 Peter 1:14–16 As obedient children, do not be conformed to the former lusts *which were yours* in your ignorance, 15 but like the Holy One who called you, be holy yourselves also in all *your* behavior; 16 because it is written, "YOU SHALL BE HOLY, FOR I AM HOLY."

1 John 1:4–7 These things we write, so that our joy may be made complete. 5 This is the message we have heard from Him and announce to you, that God is Light, and in Him there is no darkness at all. 6 If we say that we have fellowship with Him and *yet* walk in the darkness, we lie and do not practice the truth; 7 but if we walk in the Light as He Himself is in the Light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus His Son cleanses us from all sin.

1 John 3:5–9 You know that He appeared in order to take away sins; and in Him there is no sin. 6 No one who abides in Him sins; no one who sins has seen Him or knows Him. 7 Little children, make sure no one deceives you; the one who practices righteousness is righteous, just as He is righteous; 8 the one who practices sin is of the devil; for the devil has sinned from the beginning. The Son of God appeared for this purpose, to destroy the works of the devil. 9 No one who is born of God practices sin, because His seed abides in him; and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Major Ian Thomas (13 September 1914 – 1 August 2007) was a Christian evangelical writer, theological teacher, and founder of the Torchbearers Bible schools. He gave us the *Three-Fold Interlock of Faith* as follows:



Merriam-Webster defines *dependent* as: “determined or conditioned by another”
<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/dependent>

Some critics of Christianity say people use Christianity as a crutch. Well, Christianity is not a crutch. I would like to correct them. True Christianity is not a crutch, it is a total body cast. If you are truly born-again then you need to strive for a 24-hour complete dependence upon Jesus Christ.

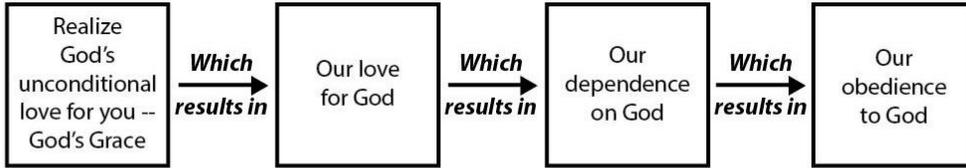
I found the three-fold interlock of faith helpful, but I wondered what starts the process and is there anything I can do to help it start or progress in my life? Then the Holy Spirit impressed upon me more meaning regarding Ephesians 3:19

Ephesians 3:19 and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.

That is when I added a box to the three-fold interlock of faith to get the four-fold interlock of faith.

The Four-Fold Interlock of a Life of Faith addresses the issue of: How to walk in the Spirit.

If you want to walk in the Spirit to be obedient to God then please understand that the first step is to realize God's unconditional love for you, in Jesus Christ.



Ephesians 3:16-19
 16 that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with power through His Spirit in the inner man,
 17 so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith; and that you, being rooted and grounded in love,
 18 may be able to comprehend with all the saints what is the breadth and length and height and depth,
 19 and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.

Realize:
 - how God loves you in Christ: Unconditional love.
 - what God has done for you: Paid for **all** of your sins.
 -what God has given you: New identity in Christ.

1 John 4:19
 19 We love, because He first loved us.

Galatians 2:20-21
 20 "I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me.
 21 "I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness comes through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."

Galatians 5:16
 16 But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not carry out the desire of the flesh.

If you keep in mind that God is love (1 John 4:8) and read 1 Corinthians 13:4-8 you will learn a great deal about how God loves you if you are a born-again Christian:

1 John 4:8 The one who does not love does not know God, for **God is love.**

1 Corinthians 13:4-8 Love is patient, love is kind *and* is not jealous; love does not brag *and* is not arrogant, 5 does not act unbecomingly; it does not seek its own, is not provoked, does not take into account a wrong *suffered*, 6 does not rejoice in unrighteousness, but rejoices with the truth; 7 bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things. 8 Love never fails; but if *there are gifts of prophecy*, they will be done away; if *there are tongues*, they will cease; if *there is knowledge*, it will be done away.

Grace teaches us to say no to ungodliness

The Law doesn't teach us to say no to ungodliness, Grace does:

Titus 2:11–12 For the grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation to all men, 12 instructing us to deny ungodliness and worldly desires and to live sensibly, righteously and godly in the present age,

Galatians 5:22–24 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. 24 Now those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires.

2 Peter 1:3–4 seeing that His divine power has granted to us everything pertaining to life and godliness, through the true knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and excellence. 4 For by these He has granted to us His precious and magnificent promises, so that by them you may become partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world by lust.

What is the power of sin?

The Law is the power of sin.

1 Corinthians 15:56 The sting of death is sin, and **the power of sin is the law;**

Number one thing to do to walk in the Spirit

The more you learn about the love of Christ which is God's grace the more you will walk in the Spirit.

Ephesians 3:16–19 that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with power through His Spirit in the inner man, 17 so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith; *and* that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 may be able to comprehend with all the saints what is the breadth and length and height and depth, 19 **and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.**

You need to learn more and more about Christ's love for you. In doing so you will be filled with the Spirit and as a result you will be controlled by the Spirit; you will therefore walk in the Spirit.

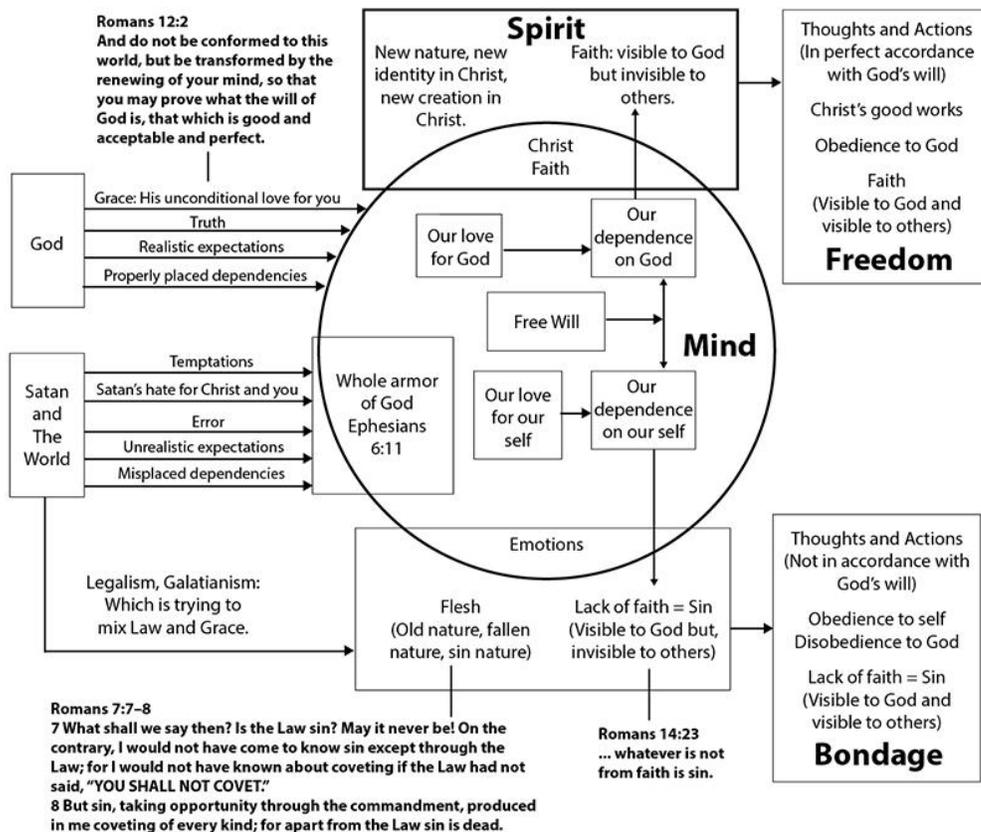
Chapter 22: Obedience God's Way Not Our Way

The only way to truly be obedient to God is to be controlled by the Spirit. The only way to be controlled by the Spirit is through the Four-Fold Interlock of A Life Of Faith as explained in the chapter titled *How To Walk In The Spirit*.

God says obedience is better than sacrifice.

1 Samuel 15:22 ... to obey is better than sacrifice ...

NOTE: The circle shown in the following diagram represents the soul.



Chapter 23: Natural Man, Carnal Man, And Spiritual Man

	Natural Man	Carnal Man	Spiritual Man	Spiritual Man
	Hopes his own works will make him acceptable to God.	Under Grace, trusts in Jesus Christ's work to be made acceptable to God but, he is walking in the flesh while still in the body.	Under Grace, trusts in Jesus Christ's work to be made acceptable to God and he is walking in the Spirit; he is controlled by the Spirit.	Under Grace, trusts in Jesus Christ's work to be made acceptable to God. A New Glorified Body is given to each believer at the resurrection.
Led by the Spirit				
Led by the Flesh				
	He is spiritually dead and walking in the flesh, controlled by the flesh. He only has the fallen nature, the old nature, the flesh.	He is spiritually alive but walking in the flesh, controlled by the flesh. He has been given a new nature but still has the old nature.	He is spiritually alive and walking in the Spirit, controlled by the Spirit of God. He still has two natures: new nature and the old fallen nature.	He is spiritually alive and walking in the Spirit. He no longer has the old fallen nature. 1 John 3:2 Beloved, now we are children of God, and it has not appeared as yet what we will be. We know that when He appears, we will be like Him, because we will see Him just as He is.
	He is under the penalty of sin.	He is delivered from the penalty of sin.	He is delivered from the power of sin.	He is delivered from the presence of sin.
	Lasts from physical birth until being born again, which is spiritual birth.	Lasts from the time of being born again until either physical death or Jesus Christ's return.		Lasts from Jesus Christ's return then out into eternity.

Chapter 24: The Scriptures

The 66 books of the Old and New Testaments are the inspired Word of God; they are authoritative and without error in the original writings; they are the inspired, infallible, and inerrant Word of God.

2 Timothy 3:14–17 You, however, continue in the things you have learned and become convinced of, knowing from whom you have learned them, 15 and that from childhood you have known the sacred writings which are able to give you the wisdom that leads to salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus. 16 All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness; 17 so that the man of God may be adequate, equipped for every good work.

2 Peter 1:19–21 So we have the prophetic word made more sure, to which you do well to pay attention as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star arises in your hearts. 20 But know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scripture is a matter of one's own interpretation, 21 for no prophecy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God.

I believe that holy men of God were moved by the Holy Spirit to write the words of Scripture as they appeared in the original manuscripts. I believe that the whole Bible in the originals manuscripts is without error. I believe the purpose of Scripture is to testify to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Mark 12:26,36 "But regarding the fact that the dead rise again, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the *passage* about *the burning bush*, how God spoke to him, saying, 'I AM THE GOD OF ABRAHAM, AND THE GOD OF ISAAC, and the God of Jacob'? 36 "David himself said in the Holy Spirit, 'THE LORD SAID TO MY LORD, "SIT AT MY RIGHT HAND, UNTIL I PUT YOUR ENEMIES BENEATH YOUR FEET." '

Mark 13:11 "When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry beforehand about what you are to say, but say whatever is given you in that hour; for it is not you who speak, but *it is* the Holy Spirit.

Luke 24:27,44 Then beginning with Moses and with all the prophets, He explained to them the things concerning Himself in all the Scriptures. 44 Now He said to them, "These are My words which I spoke to you while I was still with you, that all things which are written about Me in the Law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled."

John 5:39 "You search the Scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life; it is these that testify about Me;

Acts 1:16 "Brethren, the Scripture had to be fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit foretold by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who became a guide to those who arrested Jesus.

Acts 17:2–3 And according to Paul's custom, he went to them, and for three Sabbaths reasoned with them from the Scriptures, 3 explaining and giving evidence that the Christ had to suffer and rise again from the dead, and saying, "This Jesus whom I am proclaiming to you is the Christ."

Acts 18:28 for he powerfully refuted the Jews in public, demonstrating by the Scriptures that Jesus was the Christ.

Acts 26:22–23 "So, having obtained help from God, I stand to this day testifying both to small and great, stating nothing but what the Prophets and Moses said was going to take place; 23 that the Christ was to suffer, and that by reason of His resurrection from the dead He would be the first to proclaim light both to the Jewish people and to the Gentiles."

Acts 28:23 When they had set a day for Paul, they came to him at his lodging in large numbers; and he was explaining to them by solemnly testifying about the kingdom of God and trying to persuade them concerning Jesus, from both the Law of Moses and from the Prophets, from morning until evening.

Romans 15:4 For whatever was written in earlier times was written for our instruction, so that through perseverance and the encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope.

1 Corinthians 2:13 which things we also speak, not in words taught by human wisdom, but in those taught by the Spirit, combining spiritual thoughts with spiritual words.

1 Corinthians 10:11 Now these things happened to them as an example, and they were written for our instruction, upon whom the ends of the ages have come.

2 Timothy 3:16 All Scripture is inspired by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, for training in righteousness;

2 Peter 1:21 for no prophecy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Holy Spirit spoke from God.

Chapter 25: Indwelling Father, Son, And Holy Spirit

I believe the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit dwell in every believer. The baptism of the Holy Spirit unites all born-again believers in one body which is referred to as the body of Jesus Christ. When a believer yields his life to the in-dwelling Holy Spirit of God they are said to be *led by the Spirit*.

John 14:16–17, 23 “I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Helper, that He may be with you forever; 17 *that is* the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it does not see Him or know Him, *but* you know Him because He abides with you and will be in you. 23 Jesus answered and said to him, “If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word; and My Father will love him, and **We will come to him and make Our abode with him.**

John 16:7–15 “But I tell you the truth, it is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you; but if I go, I will send Him to you. 8 “And He, when He comes, will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and judgment; 9 concerning sin, because they do not believe in Me; 10 and concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father and you no longer see Me; 11 and concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged. 12 “I have many more things to say to you, but you cannot bear *them* now. 13 “But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all the truth; for He will not speak on His own initiative, but whatever He hears, He will speak; and He will disclose to you what is to come. 14 “He will glorify Me, for He will take of Mine and will disclose *it* to you. 15 “All things that the Father has are Mine; therefore I said that He takes of Mine and will disclose *it* to you.

1 Corinthians 6:19 Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit who is in you, whom you have from God, and that you are not your own?

Ephesians 2:22 in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling of God in the Spirit.

2 Thessalonians 2:7 For the mystery of lawlessness is already at work; only he who now restrains *will do so* until he is taken out of the way.

The Holy Spirit convicts the world respecting sin, righteousness, and judgment.

John 3:6 “That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

John 16:7–11 “But I tell you the truth, it is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you; but if I go, I will send Him to you. 8 “And He, when He comes, will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and judgment; 9 concerning sin, because they do not believe in Me; 10 and concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father and you no longer see Me; 11 and concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged.

Romans 8:9 However, you are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed the Spirit of God dwells in you. But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he does not belong to Him.

1 Corinthians 12:13 For by one Spirit we were all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free, and we were all made to drink of one Spirit.

Ephesians 4:30 Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.

Ephesians 5:18 And do not get drunk with wine, for that is dissipation, but be filled with the Spirit,

2 Thessalonians 2:7 For the mystery of lawlessness is already at work; only he who now restrains *will do so* until he is taken out of the way.

1 John 2:20–27 But you have an anointing from the Holy One, and you all know. 21 I have not written to you because you do not know the truth, but because you do know it, and because no lie is of the truth. 22 Who is the liar but the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ? This is the antichrist, the one who denies the Father and the Son. 23 Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father; the one who confesses the Son has the Father also. 24 As for you, let that abide in you which you heard from the beginning. If what you heard from the beginning abides in you, you also will abide in the Son and in the Father. 25 This is the promise which He Himself made to us: eternal life. 26 These things I have written to you concerning those who are trying to deceive you. 27 As for you, the anointing which you received from Him abides in you, and you have no need for anyone to teach you; but as His anointing teaches you about all things, and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, you abide in Him.

Chapter 26: Angels, Fallen And Not Fallen

I believe that God created sinless, spiritual beings known as angels; that one, Lucifer, sinned through pride, to become Satan; some angels joined him in his fall, some of whom became demons and are active as his agents and associates in the pursuit of his evil purposes. I believe that many angels remained faithful to God when Satan rebelled; those faithful angels are ministering spirits to those who shall be heirs of salvation i.e., to born-again Christians.

Isaiah 14:12-17

12 "How you have fallen from heaven,
O star of the morning, son of the dawn!
You have been cut down to the earth,
You who have weakened the nations!

13 "But you said in your heart,
'I will ascend to heaven;
I will raise my throne above the stars of God,
And I will sit on the mount of assembly
In the recesses of the north.

14 'I will ascend above the heights of the clouds;
I will make myself like the Most High.'

15 "Nevertheless you will be thrust down to Sheol [Hell],
To the recesses of the pit.

16 "Those who see you will gaze at you,
They will ponder over you, saying,
'Is this the man who made the earth tremble,
Who shook kingdoms,

17 Who made the world like a wilderness
And overthrew its cities,
Who did not allow his prisoners to go home?'

Ezekiel 28:11-19

11 Again the word of the LORD came to me saying,

12 "Son of man, take up a lamentation over the king of Tyre and say to him, 'Thus says the Lord GOD,
"You had the seal of perfection,
Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.

13 "You were in Eden, the garden of God;
Every precious stone was your covering:
The ruby, the topaz and the diamond;
The beryl, the onyx and the jasper;
The lapis lazuli, the turquoise and the emerald;
And the gold, the workmanship of your settings and sockets,
Was in you.

On the day that you were created
They were prepared.

14 "You were the anointed cherub who covers,
And I placed you *there*.

You were on the holy mountain of God;
You walked in the midst of the stones of fire.

15 "You were blameless in your ways
From the day you were created
Until unrighteousness was found in you.

16 "By the abundance of your trade
You were internally filled with violence,
And you sinned;
Therefore I have cast you as profane
From the mountain of God.
And I have destroyed you, O covering cherub,
From the midst of the stones of fire.

17 "Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty;
You corrupted your wisdom by reason of your splendor.
I cast you to the ground;
I put you before kings,
That they may see you.

18 "By the multitude of your iniquities,
In the unrighteousness of your trade
You profaned your sanctuaries.
Therefore I have brought fire from the midst of you;
It has consumed you,
And I have turned you to ashes on the earth
In the eyes of all who see you.

19 "All who know you among the peoples
Are appalled at you;
You have become terrified
And you will cease to be forever." ' ' "

1 Timothy 3:6 *and* not a new convert, so that he will not become conceited and fall into the condemnation incurred by the devil.

2 Peter 2:4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to pits of darkness, reserved for judgment;

Jude 6 And angels who did not keep their own domain, but abandoned their proper abode, He has kept in eternal bonds under darkness for the judgment of the great day,

Genesis 3:1–19 Now the serpent was more crafty than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said to the woman, "Indeed, has God said, 'You shall not eat from any tree of the garden?'" 2 The woman said to the serpent, "From the fruit of the trees of the garden we may eat; 3 but from the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of the garden, God has said, 'You shall not eat from it or touch it, or you will die.'" 4 The serpent said to the woman, "You surely will not die! 5 "For God knows that in the day you eat from it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." 6 When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make *one* wise, she took from its fruit and ate; and she gave also to her husband with her, and he ate. 7 Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves loin coverings. 8 They heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the

presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden. 9 Then the LORD God called to the man, and said to him, "Where are you?" 10 He said, "I heard the sound of You in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; so I hid myself." 11 And He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree of which I commanded you not to eat?" 12 The man said, "The woman whom You gave *to be* with me, she gave me from the tree, and I ate." 13 Then the LORD God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" And the woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

14 The LORD God said to the serpent,
"Because you have done this,
Cursed are you more than all cattle,
And more than every beast of the field;
On your belly you will go,
And dust you will eat
All the days of your life;

15 And I will put enmity
Between you and the woman,
And between your seed and her seed;
He shall bruise you on the head,
And you shall bruise him on the heel."

16 To the woman He said,
"I will greatly multiply
Your pain in childbirth,
In pain you will bring forth children;
Yet your desire will be for your husband,
And he will rule over you."

17 Then to Adam He said, "Because you have listened to the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree about which I commanded you, saying, 'You shall not eat from it';

Cursed is the ground because of you;
In toil you will eat of it
All the days of your life.

18 "Both thorns and thistles it shall grow for you;
And you will eat the plants of the field;

19 By the sweat of your face
You will eat bread,
Till you return to the ground,
Because from it you were taken;
For you are dust,
And to dust you shall return."

Romans 5:12–14 Therefore, just as through one man sin entered into the world, and death through sin, and so death spread to all men, because all sinned— 13 for until the Law sin was in the world, but sin is not imputed when there is no law. 14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those who had not sinned in the likeness of the offense of Adam, who is a type of Him who was to come.

2 Corinthians 4:3–4 And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, 4 in whose case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving so that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

2 Corinthians 11:13–15 For such men are false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves as apostles of Christ. 14 No wonder, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. 15 Therefore it is not surprising if his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness, whose end will be according to their deeds.

Ephesians 6:10–12 Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of His might. 11 Put on the full armor of God, so that you will be able to stand firm against the schemes of the devil. 12 For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the powers, against the world forces of this darkness, against the spiritual *forces* of wickedness in the heavenly *places*.

2 Thessalonians 2:4 who opposes and exalts himself above every so-called god or object of worship, so that he takes his seat in the temple of God, displaying himself as being God.

1 Timothy 4:1–3 But the Spirit explicitly says that in later times some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to deceitful spirits and doctrines of demons, 2 by means of the hypocrisy of liars seared in their own conscience as with a branding iron, 3 *men* who forbid marriage *and advocate* abstaining from foods which God has created to be gratefully shared in by those who believe and know the truth.

Colossians 2:15 When He had disarmed the rulers and authorities, He made a public display of them, having triumphed over them through Him.

Revelation 20:1–3, 10 Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven, holding the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. 2 And he laid hold of the dragon, the serpent of old, who is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years; 3 and he threw him into the abyss, and shut *it* and sealed *it* over him, so that he would not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were completed; after these things he must be released for a short time. 10 And the devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are also; and they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

Luke 15:10 "In the same way, I tell you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents."

Ephesians 1:21 far above all rule and authority and power and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this age but also in the one to come.

Hebrews 1:14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent out to render service for the sake of those who will inherit salvation?

Revelation 7:12 saying, "Amen, blessing and glory and wisdom and thanksgiving and honor and power and might, *be* to our God forever and ever. Amen."

Hebrews 2:6-10

6 But one has testified somewhere, saying,
"WHAT IS MAN, THAT YOU REMEMBER HIM?

OR THE SON OF MAN, THAT YOU ARE CONCERNED ABOUT HIM?

7 "YOU HAVE MADE HIM FOR A LITTLE WHILE LOWER THAN THE ANGELS;
YOU HAVE CROWNED HIM WITH GLORY AND HONOR,
AND HAVE APPOINTED HIM OVER THE WORKS OF YOUR HANDS;

8 YOU HAVE PUT ALL THINGS IN SUBJECTION UNDER HIS FEET."

For in subjecting all things to him, He left nothing that is not subject to him. But now we do not yet see all things subjected to him.

9 But we do see Him who was made for a little while lower than the angels, *namely*, Jesus, because of the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor, so that by the grace of God He might taste death for everyone.

10 For it was fitting for Him, for whom are all things, and through whom are all things, in bringing many sons to glory, to perfect the author of their salvation through sufferings.

Chapter 27: The First Advent

I believe that Jesus Christ was born of a virgin and received a human body and a sinless human nature. He was sinless throughout His life. He retained His absolute deity, being at the same time fully God and fully man. God the Son voluntarily accepted His Father's will and became the divinely provided sacrificial Lamb; He took away the sin of the world. His death was substitutionary and by His death He became the Savior of lost mankind. I believe that just as He prophesied, He arose from the dead and that His resurrection body is the pattern of that body which ultimately will be given to all believers.

Luke 1:30–35 The angel said to her, “Do not be afraid, Mary; for you have found favor with God. 31 “And behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name Him Jesus. 32 “He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High; and the Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David; 33 and He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and His kingdom will have no end.” 34 Mary said to the angel, “How can this be, since I am a virgin?” 35 The angel answered and said to her, “The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; and for that reason the holy Child shall be called the Son of God.

John 1:18 No one has seen God at any time; the only begotten God who is in the bosom of the Father, He has explained *Him*.

John 3:16 “For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.

Hebrews 4:15 For we do not have a high priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but One who has been tempted in all things as *we are*, yet without sin.

Luke 2:40 The Child continued to grow and become strong, increasing in wisdom; and the grace of God was upon Him.

John 1:1–2,14

1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

2 He was in the beginning with God.

14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Philippians 2:5–8 Have this attitude in yourselves which was also in Christ Jesus, 6 who, although He existed in the form of God, did not regard equality with God a thing to be grasped, 7 but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant, *and* being made in the likeness of men. 8 Being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.

John 1:11 He came to His own, and those who were His own did not receive Him.

Acts 2:22–24 “Men of Israel, listen to these words: Jesus the Nazarene, a man attested to you by God with miracles and wonders and signs which God performed through Him in your midst, just as you yourselves know— 23 this *Man*, delivered over by the predetermined plan and foreknowledge of God, you nailed to a cross by the hands of godless men and put *Him* to death. 24 “But God raised Him up again, putting an end to the agony of death, since it was impossible for Him to be held in its power.

1 Timothy 2:6 who gave Himself as a ransom for all, the testimony *given* at the proper time.

John 1:29 The next day he *saw* Jesus coming to him and *said*, “Behold, the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!

Romans 3:25–26 whom God displayed publicly as a propitiation in His blood through faith. *This was* to demonstrate His righteousness, because in the forbearance of God He passed over the sins previously committed; 26 for the demonstration, *I say*, of His righteousness at the present time, so that He would be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

2 Corinthians 5:14 For the love of Christ controls us, having concluded this, that one died for all, therefore all died;

Hebrews 10:5–14

5 Therefore, when He comes into the world, He says,
“SACRIFICE AND OFFERING YOU HAVE NOT DESIRED,
BUT A BODY YOU HAVE PREPARED FOR ME;

6 IN WHOLE BURNT OFFERINGS AND *sacrifices* FOR SIN YOU HAVE TAKEN NO PLEASURE.

7 “THEN I SAID, ‘BEHOLD, I HAVE COME

(IN THE SCROLL OF THE BOOK IT IS WRITTEN OF ME)

TO DO YOUR WILL, O GOD.’ ”

8 After saying above, “SACRIFICES AND OFFERINGS AND WHOLE BURNT OFFERINGS AND *sacrifices* FOR SIN YOU HAVE NOT DESIRED, NOR HAVE YOU TAKEN PLEASURE *in them*” (which are offered according to the Law),

9 then He said, “BEHOLD, I HAVE COME TO DO YOUR WILL.” He takes away the first in order to establish the second.

10 By this will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 Every priest stands daily ministering and offering time after time the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins;

12 but He, having offered one sacrifice for sins for all time, SAT DOWN AT THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD,

13 waiting from that time onward UNTIL HIS ENEMIES BE MADE A FOOTSTOOL FOR HIS FEET.

14 For by one offering He has perfected for all time those who are sanctified.

1 Peter 3:18 For Christ also died for sins once for all, *the* just for *the* unjust, so that He might bring us to God, having been put to death in the flesh, but made alive in the spirit;

John 20:20 And when He had said this, He showed them both His hands and His side. The disciples then rejoiced when they saw the Lord.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Philippians 3:20–21 For our citizenship is in heaven, from which also we eagerly wait for a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ; 21 who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His glory, by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.

Hebrews 1:3 And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power. When He had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

Ephesians 1:22–23 And He put all things in subjection under His feet, and gave Him as head over all things to the church, 23 which is His body, the fullness of Him who fills all in all.

Hebrews 7:25 Therefore He is able also to save forever those who draw near to God through Him, since He always lives to make intercession for them.

1 John 2:1 My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. And if anyone sins, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous;

Chapter 28: Salvation Only Through Jesus Christ

I believe that, due to universal spiritual death through sin, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless they are born-again. I believe that our redemption has been accomplished solely by the blood of the Lord Jesus Christ. I believe that the new birth of the believer comes only through faith in Jesus Christ; repentance is a vital part of believing and is no way a separate and independent condition of salvation; nor are any other acts, such as confession, baptism, prayer, or faithful service, to be added to believing as a condition of salvation.

Leviticus 17:11 'For the life of the flesh is in the blood, and I have given it to you on the altar to make atonement for your souls; for it is the blood by reason of the life that makes atonement.'

Isaiah 64:6

6 For all of us have become like one who is unclean,
And all our righteous deeds are like a filthy garment;
And all of us wither like a leaf,
And our iniquities, like the wind, take us away.

Matthew 26:28 for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins.

John 3:7-18 "Do not be amazed that I said to you, 'You must be born again.' 8 "The wind blows where it wishes and you hear the sound of it, but do not know where it comes from and where it is going; so is everyone who is born of the Spirit." 9 Nicodemus said to Him, "How can these things be?" 10 Jesus answered and said to him, "Are you the teacher of Israel and do not understand these things? 11 "Truly, truly, I say to you, we speak of what we know and testify of what we have seen, and you do not accept our testimony. 12 "If I told you earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you heavenly things? 13 "No one has ascended into heaven, but He who descended from heaven: the Son of Man. 14 "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up; 15 so that whoever believes will in Him have eternal life. 16 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 "For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 "He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

Romans 5:6-9 For while we were still helpless, at the right time Christ died for the ungodly. 7 For one will hardly die for a righteous man; though perhaps for the good man someone would dare even to die. 8 But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. 9 Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath of God through Him.

2 Corinthians 5:21 He made Him who knew no sin to be sin on our behalf, so that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

Galatians 3:13 Christ redeemed us from the curse of the Law, having become a curse for us—for it is written, “CURSED IS EVERYONE WHO HANGS ON A TREE”—

Galatians 6:15 For neither is circumcision anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creation.

Ephesians 1:7 In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace

Philippians 3:4–11 although I myself might have confidence even in the flesh. If anyone else has a mind to put confidence in the flesh, I far more: 5 circumcised the eighth day, of the nation of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, a Hebrew of Hebrews; as to the Law, a Pharisee; 6 as to zeal, a persecutor of the church; as to the righteousness which is in the Law, found blameless. 7 But whatever things were gain to me, those things I have counted as loss for the sake of Christ. 8 More than that, I count all things to be loss in view of the surpassing value of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them but rubbish so that I may gain Christ, 9 and may be found in Him, not having a righteousness of my own derived from *the* Law, but that which is through faith in Christ, the righteousness which *comes* from God on the basis of faith, 10 that I may know Him and the power of His resurrection and the fellowship of His sufferings, being conformed to His death; 11 in order that I may attain to the resurrection from the dead.

Titus 3:5 He saved us, not on the basis of deeds which we have done in righteousness, but according to His mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewing by the Holy Spirit,

James 1:18 In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we would be a kind of first fruits among His creatures.

1 Peter 1:18–23 knowing that you were not redeemed with perishable things like silver or gold from your futile way of life inherited from your forefathers, 19 but with precious blood, as of a lamb unblemished and spotless, *the blood* of Christ. 20 For He was foreknown before the foundation of the world, but has appeared in these last times for the sake of you 21 who through Him are believers in God, who raised Him from the dead and gave Him glory, so that your faith and hope are in God. 22 Since you have in obedience to the truth purified your souls for a sincere love of the brethren, fervently love one another from the heart, 23 for you have been born again not of seed which is perishable but imperishable, *that is*, through the living and enduring word of God.

John 1:12 But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, *even* to those who believe in His name,

John 3:16–18 “For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 “For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 “He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

John 3:36 “He who believes in the Son has eternal life; but he who does not obey the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God abides on him.”

John 5:24 "Truly, truly, I say to you, he who hears My word, and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life, and does not come into judgment, but has passed out of death into life.

John 6:29 Jesus answered and said to them, "This is the work of God, that you believe in Him whom He has sent."

Acts 13:39 and through Him everyone who believes is freed from all things, from which you could not be freed through the Law of Moses.

Acts 16:31 They said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household."

Romans 1:16–17 For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek. 17 For in it *the* righteousness of God is revealed from faith to faith; as it is written, "BUT THE RIGHTEOUS *man* SHALL LIVE BY FAITH."

Romans 3:22–26 even *the* righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all those who believe; for there is no distinction; 23 for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, 24 being justified as a gift by His grace through the redemption which is in Christ Jesus; 25 whom God displayed publicly as a propitiation in His blood through faith. *This was* to demonstrate His righteousness, because in the forbearance of God He passed over the sins previously committed; 26 for the demonstration, *I say*, of His righteousness at the present time, so that He would be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.

Romans 4:5 But to the one who does not work, but believes in Him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is credited as righteousness,

Romans 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes.

Galatians 3:22 But the Scripture has shut up everyone under sin, so that the promise by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe.

The Extent of Salvation

I believe that when a person exercises faith in Jesus Christ as described in the New Testament, that person passes from spiritual death to spiritual life, from an old creation to a new creation. The person is accepted by God the Father just as He accepts God the Son. The person is loved by God the Father just as He loves Jesus Christ. The person is absolutely complete in Jesus Christ and is therefore in no way required by God to seek a so-called "second blessing" or a "second work of grace."

John 5:24 "Truly, truly, I say to you, he who hears My word, and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life, and does not come into judgment, but has passed out of death into life.

John 17:23 I in them and You in Me, that they may be perfected in unity, so that the world may know that You sent Me, and loved them, even as You have loved Me.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Acts 13:39 and through Him everyone who believes is freed from all things, from which you could not be freed through the Law of Moses.

Romans 5:1 Therefore, having been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ,

1 Corinthians 3:21–23 So then let no one boast in men. For all things belong to you, 22 whether Paul or Apollos or Cephas or the world or life or death or things present or things to come; all things belong to you, 23 and you belong to Christ; and Christ belongs to God.

Ephesians 1:3 Blessed *be* the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly *places* in Christ,

Colossians 2:10 and in Him you have been made complete, and He is the head over all rule and authority;

1 John 4:17 By this, love is perfected with us, so that we may have confidence in the day of judgment; because as He is, so also are we in this world.

1 John 5:11–12 And the testimony is this, that God has given us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. 12 He who has the Son has the life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have the life.

Chapter 29: Sanctification

Sanctification means being set apart unto God; every Christian's position toward God is the same as Jesus Christ. However, every Christian still has the old nature or fallen nature which is never set apart unto God. Every Christian has their old nature until they die. In this life, through the power of God the Holy Spirit, a Christian can grow in grace and become more and more Christ-like. At the resurrection of the righteous, every believer will be given a glorified human body; as is spoken of in 1 John 3:2

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now we are children of God, and it has not appeared as yet what we will be. We know that when He appears, we will be like Him, because we will see Him just as He is.

I believe we are given a preview of the type of glorified human bodies Christians will be given; the Bible passage is referred to as the transfiguration, see Mark 9:1–3

Mark 9:1–3 And Jesus was saying to them, **“Truly I say to you, there are some of those who are standing here who will not taste death until they see the kingdom of God after it has come with power.”** 2 Six days later, Jesus *took with Him Peter and James and John, and *brought them up on a high mountain by themselves. And He was transfigured before them; 3 and His garments became radiant and exceedingly white, as no launderer on earth can whiten them.

John 17:17 **“Sanctify them in the truth; Your word is truth.**

2 Corinthians 3:18 But we all, with unveiled face, beholding as in a mirror the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from glory to glory, just as from the Lord, the Spirit.

2 Corinthians 7:1 Therefore, having these promises, beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all defilement of flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

Ephesians 4:24 and put on the new self, which in *the likeness of* God has been created in righteousness and holiness of the truth.

Ephesians 5:25–27 Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself up for her, 26 so that He might sanctify her, having cleansed her by the washing of water with the word, 27 that He might present to Himself the church in all her glory, having no spot or wrinkle or any such thing; but that she would be holy and blameless.

1 Thessalonians 5:23 Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you entirely; and may your spirit and soul and body be preserved complete, without blame at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Hebrews 10:10,14 By this will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. 14 For by one offering He has perfected for all time those who are sanctified.

Hebrews 12:10 For they disciplined us for a short time as seemed best to them, but He *disciplines us* for *our* good, so that we may share His holiness.

Chapter 30: The Ordinances

I believe that water baptism and the Lord's Supper are the only ordinances of the Christian church to be performed purely as a testimony of Jesus Christ. **Performing the ordinances is NOT required for salvation.** The word ordinance is used to signify that these rites were instituted, or ordained, by Jesus Christ himself.

Matthew 28:19–20 “Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”

Luke 22:19–20 And when He had taken *some* bread *and* given thanks, He broke it and gave it to them, saying, “This is My body which is given for you; do this in remembrance of Me.” 20 And in the same way *He took* the cup after they had eaten, saying, “This cup which is poured out for you is the new covenant in My blood.”

Acts 10:47–48 “Surely no one can refuse the water for these to be baptized who have received the Holy Spirit just as we *did*, can he?” 48 And he ordered them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay on for a few days.

Acts 16:32–33 And they spoke the word of the Lord to him together with all who were in his house. 33 And he took them that *very* hour of the night and washed their wounds, and immediately he was baptized, he and all his *household*.

Acts 18:7–8 Then he left there and went to the house of a man named Titius Justus, a worshiper of God, whose house was next to the synagogue. 8 Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, believed in the Lord with all his household, and many of the Corinthians when they heard were believing and being baptized.

1 Corinthians 11:26 For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes.

Chapter 31: Rewards

After physical death, born-again believers will be given rewards according to their faithfulness and service for Jesus. The rewards will be given at the judgment seat of Christ.

1 Corinthians 3:9–15 For we are God's fellow workers; you are God's field, God's building. 10 According to the grace of God which was given to me, like a wise master builder I laid a foundation, and another is building on it. But each man must be careful how he builds on it. 11 For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid, which is Jesus Christ. 12 Now if any man builds on the foundation with gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, straw, 13 each man's work will become evident; for the day will show it because it is *to be* revealed with fire, and the fire itself will test the quality of each man's work. 14 If any man's work which he has built on it remains, he will receive a reward. 15 If any man's work is burned up, he will suffer loss; but he himself will be saved, yet so as through fire.

2 Corinthians 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may be recompensed for his deeds in the body, according to what he has done, whether good or bad.

Chapter 32: The Eternal State

I believe that after physical death, the souls of born-again believers go immediately into the presence of the Lord Jesus Christ. They be with Him forever and at the resurrection they will be given glorified human bodies. However, after physical death, the souls of all non-born-again people remain conscious in a state of condemnation and misery until the great white throne judgment. All non-born-again people will have their soul reunited with their non-glorified body; they will not to be annihilated, they will be cast into the lake of fire, and be punished forever, for all eternity.

Luke 16:19–26 “Now there was a rich man, and he habitually dressed in purple and fine linen, joyously living in splendor every day. 20 “And a poor man named Lazarus was laid at his gate, covered with sores, 21 and longing to be fed with the *crumbs* which were falling from the rich man’s table; besides, even the dogs were coming and licking his sores. 22 “Now the poor man died and was carried away by the angels to Abraham’s bosom; and the rich man also died and was buried. 23 “In Hades he lifted up his eyes, being in torment, and *saw Abraham far away and Lazarus in his bosom. 24 “And he cried out and said, ‘Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus so that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool off my tongue, for I am in agony in this flame.’ 25 “But Abraham said, ‘Child, remember that during your life you received your good things, and likewise Lazarus bad things; but now he is being comforted here, and you are in agony. 26 ‘And besides all this, between us and you there is a great chasm fixed, so that those who wish to come over from here to you will not be able, and *that* none may cross over from there to us.’

Luke 23:43 And He said to him, “Truly I say to you, today you shall be with Me in Paradise.”

2 Corinthians 5:8 we are of good courage, I say, and prefer rather to be absent from the body and to be at home with the Lord.

Philippians 1:23 But I am hard-pressed from both *directions*, having the desire to depart and be with Christ, for *that* is very much better;

2 Thessalonians 1:7–10 and *to give* relief to you who are afflicted and to us as well when the Lord Jesus will be revealed from heaven with His mighty angels in flaming fire, 8 dealing out retribution to those who do not know God and to those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. 9 These will pay the penalty of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of His power, 10 when He comes to be glorified in His saints on that day, and to be marveled at among all who have believed—for our testimony to you was believed.

Jude 6–7 And angels who did not keep their own domain, but abandoned their proper abode, He has kept in eternal bonds under darkness for the judgment of the great day, 7 just as Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them, since they in the same way as these indulged in gross immorality and went after strange flesh, are exhibited as an example in undergoing the punishment of eternal fire.

Revelation 20:11–15 Then I saw a great white throne and Him who sat upon it, from whose presence earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. 12 And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and books were opened; and another book was opened, which is *the book of life*; and the dead were judged from the things which were written in the books, according to their deeds. 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead which were in them; and they were judged, every one *of them* according to their deeds. 14 Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire. 15 And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

Chapter 33: Evangelism

Evangelism means sharing the gospel of Jesus Christ with people. You can share the information from the following chapters, near the start of this book:

- *Christianity Is Not a Religion*
- *How To Get into Heaven*
- *How Not To Get into Heaven*

Sharing the gospel of Jesus Christ can be done by any true believer in Jesus Christ. The Holy Spirit of God will live through the true believer to tell others what they need to know to be saved. To help you learn how to share the gospel with people, I recommend the free material available at:

<https://www.livingwaters.com/>

Here is an effective way to share the gospel:

<https://www.livingwaters.com/are-you-a-good-person/>

Here are just three examples of using the above method with real people on the street. There are many more examples of using the above approach available on the Living Waters YouTube site:

- <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xS8ml0M0ezI>
- <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PtFbtQiFRcI>
- <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2CFx4Hezdz0>

Chapter 34: Godhead (Trinity)

I believe that God eternally exists in three persons—God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit—and that these three persons are one God, having precisely the same nature, attributes, and perfections.

Matthew 28:18–20 And Jesus came up and spoke to them, saying, “All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. 19 “Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”

Mark 12:29 Jesus answered, “The foremost is, ‘Hear, O Israel! The Lord our God is one Lord;

John 1:14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Acts 5:3–4 But Peter said, “Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back *some* of the price of the land? 4 “While it remained *unsold*, did it not remain your own? And after it was sold, was it not under your control? Why is it that you have conceived this deed in your heart? You have not lied to men but to God.”

2 Corinthians 13:14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit, be with you all.

Hebrews 1:1–3 God, after He spoke long ago to the fathers in the prophets in many portions and in many ways, 2 in these last days has spoken to us in His Son, whom He appointed heir of all things, through whom also He made the world. 3 And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power. When He had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

Revelation 1:4–6 John to the seven churches that are in Asia: Grace to you and peace, from Him who is and who was and who is to come, and from the seven Spirits who are before His throne, 5 and from Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To Him who loves us and released us from our sins by His blood— 6 and He has made us *to be* a kingdom, priests to His God and Father—to Him *be* the glory and the dominion forever and ever. Amen.

Chapter 35: A Trinity Analogy

As mentioned earlier, the Trinity is the concept that God is one God, and He exists as three eternal persons: God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Three persons yet one nature. Some people try to use water as an analogy for the Trinity saying water can exist as a solid, liquid, or gas. But other people will quickly point out that water cannot exist in all three states at the same time and therefore using water as an analogy is actual guilty of modalism – which is the heresy of saying the Father becomes the Son and the Son becomes the Holy Spirit. However, I have never seen anyone point out the fact that many substances can exist in multiple states at the same time – this is referred to as the triple point of a substance. For example, water can exist as a solid, and a liquid, and a gas **all at the same time** when the temperature is 273.16 K (0.01 °C) and the pressure is 0.611657 kPa (0.00603659 atm) which is known as the *triple point of water*. Another example is titanium which can exist as a solid, and a liquid, and a gas all at the same time when the temperature is 1,941 K (1,668 °C) and the pressure is 5.3×10^{-3} kPa (5.2×10^{-5} atm) which is known as the *triple point of titanium*. There are dozens of other substances I could have used to provide additional examples. So, since water **can** exist as a solid, and a liquid, and a gas **all at the same time**, using water as an analogy for the Trinity is valid. However, I have come up with what I feel is a better analogy for the Trinity: The *Three Fingers Through Two Dimensions* analogy.

I thought of this analogy many years ago and I have never seen or heard of anyone else using it. Although the analogy is not contained in any book I have read, it was inspired by a short book. In 1884, a teacher named Edwin Abbott, wrote a short novel titled *Flatland: A Romance of Many Dimensions*. In it, Abbott describes a fictional two-dimensional world called *Flatland*. People living in Flatland are simple geometric shapes such as triangles, squares, polygons, and circles. Residents of Flatland determine who they meet by feeling their way around the perimeter of the other person. For example, a triangle could deduce that they are interacting with another triangle or perhaps they met a square or a circle. A particular square in Flatland encounters a sphere which is a three-dimensional person from Spaceland. But since the square is from Flatland, he can only perceive the three-dimensional sphere as a circle because that is a two-dimensional “slice” through the sphere. Spoiler: Even though the square comes to believe that there really are three-dimensional people and a real place called Spaceland, the square is unable to convince his fellow Flatlanders of the existence of three-dimensional people or of their home, Spaceland. The residents of Flatland are simply unable to conceive of a three-dimensional world even though it can be logically explained to them; all they know is a two-dimensional existence. They simply cannot conceive of a three-dimensional world. I was thinking about the ideas portrayed in Abbott’s book when I thought of an analogy.

Three Fingers Through Two Dimensions Analogy

Imagine four circles living in a two-dimensional world which is really just a flat piece of paper in our three-dimensional world. None of the circles have any idea that we exist outside of their two-dimensional world. Now imagine I poke one of my fingers through the piece of paper. How would the circles react? Initially, they react with complete surprise because a circle just materialized in their presence. They investigate by feeling all the way around my finger and they confirm I am a circle just like them. Next, I poke two more fingers through their 2-D world. Again, the residents are initially shocked but then they come over and feel around each of my fingers and confirm that two new visitors have just materialized

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

out of nowhere. Then, I remove two of my fingers from their world and I use the remaining finger to explain to the residents that the other two visitors are me. The residents are immediately confused. I tell them that the three of us share the same nature. They respond by saying "But you are three separate individuals. Do you mean you have similar natures?" I tell them "No, you perceive me as three separate persons which is true from your perception but in addition to that, I in fact share one nature." They say "That is not logical. You cannot say you are three separate persons, and you are the same nature at the same time." So, what do I do? I try to explain by telling them "There is another dimension in which my three separate persons are connected." Eventually I convince two of the residents that it is logically possible to have an additional dimension and my three persons can in fact be connected as part of my one nature. But though convinced that it is logically possible to have three dimensions they quickly point out that they cannot imagine or conceive of such a three-dimensional world. The other residents of the 2-D world refuse to believe there is a third dimension because they cannot conceive of it; because they cannot imagine what such a 3-D world would look like. You, as a fellow member of this 3-D world, can easily see why the 2-D residents cannot conceive of our 3-D world. Until the 2-D residents are transformed into 3-D residents they will never truly be able to conceive how my three persons in their 2-D world actually share one nature in the 3-D world.

The fingers through the 2-D world analogy is useful to help you make one simple conclusion: The existence of a fourth dimension would allow the three persons of God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit to share one divine nature. We can know three equally divine persons in this 3-D world and believe that they are connected as one God by the simple addition of one dimension. We cannot conceive of what the fourth dimension looks like, but something can logically and actually exist even if we cannot conceive of what it looks like.

Chapter 36: Memorize The Names Of The Books Of The New Testament

The time needed to memorize the names of all of the books of the New Testament will vary depending on each individual. I have taught this to people in about 45 minutes on average. It will probably take you a little longer to learn them as you read through this for the first time. But once you have learned the House Memory System you will be able to teach a friend over lunch and to memorize the names of all 27 books of the New Testament in the order in which they appear. In fact, you will learn the names so well you could even name the books in reverse order, or I could give you the name of a book and you could instantly tell me the name of the book which appears before it and after it. Imagine how excited people will be when you show them how to do the same and how they can teach others. They will not believe they can do it, but they can, and so can you.

The first step in accomplishing our goal of memorizing the names of all the books of the New Testament in the order in which they appear in the Bible is to pick a familiar room in your home. We will probably end up using more than one room so you may want to select one that connects to a hallway leading to other rooms. We will be imagining pictures sitting on different pieces of furniture, on lamps, tables, bookshelves, or coming through windows, going out of windows, and blocking doorways. Now people ask: "But, what happens when we rearrange the furniture or, if we move to another home? Won't I have trouble remembering the names of the books of the New Testament?" No. If you think about it, you can probably remember the physical layout of a room you had as a child, a classroom as a student, the layout of your old high school, university, or your last couple of offices or workplaces.

So, select a familiar room and I'll give you the memory pictures to place in that room. I'll suggest possible locations but, you pick the actual locations as they make sense to you.

The first book is the book of Matthew, for this I use the picture of a man sneezing. You may ask: What has that got to do with Matthew? The French pronunciation of Matthew sounds like A-Chew. So, just trust me on this, and imagine a man standing in the doorway or entrance to the room you have selected, and that man is sneezing repeatedly. That's the book of Matthew. Alternatively, if you know someone named Matthew, you could just imagine that person sneezing. Now the next book is the book of Mark. We will use a shark as the picture for Mark, since shark is a sound-alike for Mark. Put the shark on a sofa or chair in the room. If you like you could have the sneezing man walk over to the shark and have the shark offer the man a tissue for his endless sneezing. Next is the book of Luke for which I use the picture of a spook or ghost. You could have the shark suddenly open its mouth and have the spook fly out. Next, I want you to imagine the spook fly into an outhouse, but, put the outhouse on or under a piece of furniture in the room. The picture of an old outhouse is my standard picture for the book of John. An outhouse is an outdoor washroom used prior to indoor plumbing and rarely seen today; it was given the nickname "john". Alternatively, if you know someone named John, you could just imagine that person but, have do a silly dance because that will help you remember them at that point.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

The next step is of critical importance. Repeat the pictures in your mind and say the key words aloud, you do not have to say the name of the book itself. At this stage just walk through the room or office you have selected and see the various pictures in your mind in the doorway and on the pieces of furniture. Run through the pictures in your mind **at least three times**.

After having run through the pictures in your mind at least three times you are now ready to add additional pictures. Imagine an axe crashing through the door of the old outhouse, from the inside out. Imagine that the axe breaks right through the door and sticks into something. You pick what it sticks into. You could have it stick into a piece of furniture next to where you placed the outhouse, or it could even stick into the floor just in front of the outhouse. The axe will be the standard picture for the book of Acts. Now I want you to imagine a Roman gladiator, or a Roman wearing a toga, whichever you prefer, who grabs the axe and starts to swing it over his head. The Roman gladiator is, of course, for the book of Romans. Next, imagine that the Roman gladiator hops into an Indy race car. Place the car somewhere highly unusual; say on top of your television, or on a windowsill, or beneath a coffee table. He hops into the Indy car as you say to yourself car-Indy, a sound-alike for First Corinthians. I warned you earlier in the book that these systems may appear ridiculous but keep going, it really works, and works well. Now, repeat the pictures in your mind, and say the pictures aloud, don't worry yet about saying the names of the books, just run through the room in your mind. Go through the room from beginning to end **at least three times**.

You should be noticing something I like to do when I memorize a series of pictures. Memorize three or four pictures in the room you have selected, repeat them in your mind three times then add the next few pictures to your room. Try not to put too many pictures on any one piece of furniture. I limit myself to one or two pictures at most to any one piece of furniture, doorway, window, or corner. If you run out of space begin to move out of the room and down a hallway, into another room, outside in your backyard, or even down the street.

Ok, now add the next few books. Let's say the First car-Indy races across the room and rear ends a second car-Indy which, of course, is Second Corinthians. Place the second car in a particular location in the room which will help you recall it later. Witnessing the accident is a cow-gal (a girl dressed in western clothing wearing a ten-gallon hat). Try to place the cow-gal in a strange location or position, you could have her swinging from a light overhead, standing in an air-conditioning vent, or heating vent whatever. This cow-gal wearing the ten-gallon hat is our standard picture for the book of Galatians. Now it gets funnier. The cow-gal takes off her ten-gallon hat and shakes it off causing thousands and thousands of fleas to jump off right there in your hallway or doorway, or whatever makes sense in your room. But make sure you have her shaking the fleas off in a specific location in your room or office. The fleas will be the standard memory-hook for the book of Ephesians (Efleasians... get it?). Now I want you to add someone you know to your picture. What will work best here will be someone who would not normally be in the room where you are imagining your memory pictures. So, if you are using your living room at home you might want to think of having your boss in the picture at this point. Pick someone unusual and imagine that they see these thousands of fleas and they are so startled by the sight that they do a backflip away from the fleas. The backflip will be the standard memory-hook for the book of Philippians. (Flip-ians... get that one?). All your mind needs is a little nudge and your brain will supply the rest of the book's name.

Take the time right now to go through the whole series of pictures and say aloud the key words in the pictures. Don't worry about saying the names of the books yet. Just walk through the rooms in your mind; go through the list of pictures three times.

By now you should be getting the idea. You are just placing funny pictures on, in, under or near pieces of furniture, doorways or windows in familiar rooms, and as you walk through the rooms in your mind you can easily recall the pictures.

OK, let's continue. Whoever you picked as the person to do the backflip after seeing the fleas, I want you to imagine that when that person lands on the ground they knock over a large 6-foot-high cola bottle (**Cola**-sians... get it?) Place the cola bottle in a doorway, on a table, or maybe on top of a stereo. Just place it somewhere in the room that makes sense so that it will be in the natural flow of how you may look around the room; that way it will come back to you more easily when recalling the pictures.

Now I want you to imagine that the knocked over cola bottle starts to drain cola all over the place, everything is getting soaked. In fact, you look down and notice that your favorite dried thistle just got soaked too! You bend down and pick it up as it floats in the cola, and you try to shake it off as it droops down in your hand. So, you are trying to dry off your 1 thistle (First **Thistle**-onians... get it?). As you stand there shaking it off you look up and see someone (you can pick anyone you like here, the stranger the better... maybe your Pastor, or an old schoolteacher) imagine that they have two thistles in their mouth and they say to you "Yeah, my thistles are soaked too!" this will be our standard for Second Thessalonians. Really try to imagine that the person you have picked is standing there with two thistles sticking out of his or her mouth and is speaking with you.

Next, I want you to imagine an extremely timid person. He is poking his head around the corner of a wall, or through a window, or even out from beneath a piece of furniture. Maybe this timid person is trying to eavesdrop on the conversation you are having with the person who has the two thistles sticking out of his mouth. Well, the timid person is our sound-alike for First Timothy (**1 Timidly**).

Now imagine a second head poking from around the corner, or furniture or very close to the other timid person. So, now we have a Second timid person, which of course is Second Timothy.

Suddenly the second timid person jumps into the center of the room, or you could have him jump on top of a stove, or counter, and you realize he wasn't as timid as you thought. He puts on a pair of ballet tights right in front of you. Then he proceeds to leap in ballet fashion all over the room. He is our standard memory-hook for the book of (Titus...**Tight-us**) Now is a good time to practice your house memory pictures so far. Please take the time to review your series of pictures, but this time review your pictures from the cow-gal to the guy in the ballet tights.

Have the guy in tights leap over and pick up a file, which is a small hand-held metal tool. Have him begin to file something in your house that you really wouldn't want filed, that will help you remember the picture. Maybe he files an expensive lamp, or a favorite photograph of yours, or even just the corner of a doorway or window in your home. He will be our standard picture for the book of Philemon (**File-man**). If you like, instead of seeing a man using a file, you could see a person filing some very important papers into a strange place in your home maybe into the back of your television, or beneath the corner of a piece of carpeting. Some people may prefer to imagine a person filing papers rather than using a filing tool. Whichever works best for you, use that picture. And if you can come up with your own picture, I encourage you to use that instead of mine. Your own pictures will always be more powerful reminders than mine.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Now the man filing is working so hard that he has developed a thirst, so he grabs a large beer mug, a brew and then another brew and yet another one. You can place the beer mugs in a specific location, maybe in a desk drawer next to where the man was working, or on top of a high bookshelf. The man quenching his thirst with a bunch of brews is our standard picture for the book of Hebrews (he-brews). Realizing that he shouldn't have consumed those brews he decides to go to a gymnasium to exercise. Imagine the man working out furiously in a gym. This will be the standard for the book of James (James - Jim - **Gym**). Alternatively, if you know someone by the name of James then you could imagine him in your next memory location. Practice the memory pictures from the cow-gal through the gym or James.

Next have James or the guy who was working out in the gym finish his workout and hop into a jet plane which just happened to be sitting in your house. This is a single-seat plane. We will refer to it as a 1-seater jet. This is our picture for First Peter (**1-Seater**). So, he hops in and flies out into another room or even just across the same room to land in a very strange area. But wherever you choose to have him land he lands right next to another jet airplane. This second jet is a 2-seater and is our picture for Second Peter (**2-Seater**). Imagine now that all the pilots share three tiny little outhouses at their tiny little airport. So, imagine there is a line of three tiny little outhouses or johns right next to where the 1-seater jet landed which was right next to where the 2-seater jet was parked. The first john is for men, the second john is for women, and the third john is for a baby changing station. So, there is our picture for First, Second and 3rd John. Alternatively, if you know someone named John then you could imagine John and two more John clones.

Practice walking through the rooms in your mind and go through your pictures from the cola bottle through the three tiny little Johns **at least three times**.

Now imagine that you hear music, it is the Beatles playing their hit song "Hey Jude", as they walk out of the tiny little outhouses. This will of course be our picture for the book of Jude. But have the drummer Ringo be the last one to walk out. As he walks out, he is playing his drums. Instead of using drumsticks he is playing his drums using Revel ice-creams (just a brand name of ice-cream bars). That is the last picture, and it is for the book of Revelation (**Revels**). Now practice walking through the rooms in your mind and go through your pictures from the cola bottle through the Revel ice-creams **at least three times**.

Practice the entire series of pictures by concentrating on the rooms in which you placed the pictures. Just try to recite the pictures. Don't worry about the names of the various books just yet. As you go through, if you have trouble remembering some of the pictures, then make sure that you have placed them on a piece of furniture or in a doorway or swinging from a light fixture or whatever. Once you are sure you can recite all the pictures try saying aloud both the pictures and the names of each book. Finally, try saying the names of the books only as you walk through the rooms in your mind.

Repeat the complete series of pictures at least three times in the next 24 hours; the more times the better. Try going through the pictures as you walk through the rooms in your mind and say only the names of the books out loud. Have someone check you. Try reciting the books forwards and backwards. Get someone to give you the name of a book and see if you can name the book on either side of it.

Finally, you need to refresh your memory by repeating the complete series of pictures at least three or four times during the next week. Try going through the pictures while waiting in a line up, or sitting in a traffic jam, or while riding the bus. Try to repeat the list of memory pictures three times every day.

Now it is very important that you practice this series of memory pictures at least three times in the next 24 hours, and then at least three more times in the next seven days. Then you will need to practice it any chance you get e.g., when you get up in the morning, at noon, and again just before you fall asleep at night.

Books of the New Testament

BOOK	SUGGESTED MEMORY PICTURE
Matthew	A-Chew. A man sneezing
Mark	Shark
Luke	Spook (like a ghost) or Nuke (like a nuclear bomb or mushroom cloud)
John	Friend named John or use an Outhouse which is an old style outdoor washroom: a "john"
Acts	Axe
Romans	Roman gladiator, or Roman in a toga
1 Corinthians	1 Car-Indy
2 Corinthians	2 Car-Indys
Galatians	Cow-gal wearing ten-gallon hat
Ephesians	Fleas
Philippians	Back flip
Colossians	Cola bottle, make it a gigantic cola bottle
1 Thessalonians	1 Thistle soaked by the cola
2 Thessalonians	2 Thistles sticking out a friend's mouth
1 Timothy	1 Timid man
2 Timothy	2 Timid men bumping into each other
Titus	Man in ballet tights dancing around
Philemon	File man, filing something
Hebrews	Brew, or a big beer glass
James	A bottle of jam or a Gymnasium (gym)
1 Peter	1-Seater jet air plane, or 1-Feeter or foot print
2 Peter	2-Seater jet air plane, or 2-Feeter or foot prints
1 John	1 copy of your friend named John but as a tiny version
2 John	2 copies of friend named John but as tiny versions
3 John	3 copies of friend John but as tiny versions
Jude	Lawyer yelling out "Sued, sued, sued!" or Beatles playing "Hey Jude"
Revelation	Level to line up a picture straight or Ringo uses "Revel" ice-creams to play the drums.

People usually ask: "What happens when I have used all the rooms in my home?" Try your office, workplace, or an old school. Or try beginning your tour of the room from a different point. Maybe come through a window. You will be amazed, but what I have experienced is that as you are thinking of a piece of furniture, it seems to only trigger the pictures appropriate to the topic you are recalling.

Chapter 37: Memorize The Names Of The Books Of The Old Testament

Now let's try the books of the Old Testament. Select a different room or office and place the suggested memory pictures at specific locations. Again, I encourage you to modify the suggested pictures or even come up with your own. Remember to do only three or four at a time and then review. Do a few more then review and so on.

BOOK	SUGGESTED MEMORY PICTURE
Genesis	Genie, maybe with an Aladdin's lamp next to him
Exodus	Exit sign
Leviticus	Levi jeans, being worn by a Levitical priest
Numbers	Big numbers painted on something
Deuteronomy	Dude, western cow-boy, or a real cool dude
Joshua	Slosh or splash-you-all
Judges	A courtroom judge banging a gavel.
Ruth	Phone Booth
1 Samuel	1 mule slamming into something (1 Slam-mule)
2 Samuel	2 mules slamming into something (2 Slam-mule)
1 Kings	1 King in a flowing robe
2 Kings	2 Kings sitting back to back
1 Chronicles	1 Chronically ill doll.
2 Chronicles	2 Chronically ill dolls walking hand in hand.
Ezra	A giant raw steak in the shape of a letter Z, (Z-Raw)
Nehemiah	Man balancing a pie on his knee (Knee-a-pie-a)
Esther	Woman with letter S on her dress (S'ed-her)
Job	A cob of corn
Psalms	Palm trees
Proverbs	A golf PRO
Ecclesiastes	Nasty little kids, a couple of nasties
Song of Songs	King Solomon singing his heart out
Isaiah	Giant eyeball
Jeremiah	Thousands of glass jars, each with a pie inside (Jar-a-pie-ah)
Lamentations	A flock of lambs
Ezekiel	A man calming down a horse says "Eze Gal" or a sleazy gal
Daniel	A group of people dancing and yelling (Dance-yell)
Hosea	Man using a fire hose and hosing people down
Joel	Giant jewel
Amos	A whole bunch of moss growing on something (A-moss)
Obadiah	Someone with an o-bad-eye
Jonah	A whale, or really big fish
Micah	Man reporting event in a large microphone (Mic-ah)
Nahum	Horse making naying sound as he hums loudly
Habakkuk	A-back-pack
Zephaniah	Referee with Z on his shirt and pie in his face. (Z-Ref-a-pie-a)
Haggai	Old hag yells at referee for making a bad call
Zechariah	Sack a pies (Sack-a-pie-a)
Malachi	Mallet guy

It's important to practice this series of memory pictures at least three times in the next 24 hours, and then at least three more times in the next seven days.

To memorize all the books of the Bible -- in alphabetical order -- all you would have to do is pick another room or office and drop your standard pictures for each book on pieces of furniture in the new room.

Chapter 38: Memorize The Attributes Of God

We cannot know everything about God because He is infinite and we are finite. We can only know the things which He has chosen to reveal to us. This study is based upon what the Bible tells us about God's nature.

If a person says they worship God, but they have a view of God based on their own opinion and not based on His Word then they are guilty of idolatry. For example, if a person says God will not send anyone to hell because God is love then that person is guilty of idolatry. They have a view of God based on who they want God to be and not who God is. Their view of God is in error. God is indeed love, but they are ignoring that God is also justice and He tells us He will judge sin and everyone who does not trust in Jesus Christ will be sent to hell.

It is important to have a correct view of God because it will bless you. If you memorize the true attributes of God, then you will get to know God better. You will worship the one true God and not an incorrect idolatrous view of God. You will draw closer to God, and He will draw closer to you. God has blessed me many times as I think about His true attributes. For example, when I am in bed trying to fall asleep, or waiting in a line up, or sitting in traffic, I can meditate on the attributes of God and worship Him in Truth. He blesses me as I prayerfully meditate on His true nature.

The House Memory System enables you to memorize a list of items and recite them forwards or backwards. House Memory involves picking a familiar room or office space and then in your mind imagining a memory-hook picture on each piece of furniture in the room. The picture triggers your memory for a key point, item, or word you would like to remember. For example, we can use the system to remember the attributes of God. To do this we will need to change intangibles into tangibles and use something called sound-alikes. Also, the more action and strangeness you can include in your memory-hook picture the more easily you will remember it; the better it will be written in your memory. For a more detailed explanation of the memory system, if you have not already done so, please read the chapter titled *Memorize the Names of The Books of The New Testament*.

The Attributes

Trinity

The Trinity refers to the essence or nature of God. The Trinity is the concept that God is one God, and He exists as three eternal persons: God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each person is distinct yet are one essence or nature. The Father loves the Son and loves the Spirit; the Son loves the Father and loves the Spirit; the Spirit loves the Father and loves the Son.

God wants a loving relationship with each of us. It comes from His very nature; He is a Trinity. Loving relationships are an expression of who He is at His core. It has been said that: *God is one what and three whos*.

Deuteronomy 6:4 "Hear, O Israel! The Lord is our God, the Lord is one!

Ephesians 4:6 one God and Father of all who is over all and through all and in all.

The Bible teaches the Father is God, the Son is God, and the Holy Spirit is God.

The Father is God:

Romans 1:7 to all who are beloved of God in Rome, called as saints: Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

The Son is God:

Hebrews 1:8

But of the Son He says,
"Your throne, O God, is forever and ever,
And the righteous scepter is the scepter of His kingdom.

The Holy Spirit is God:

Acts 5:3-4 But Peter said, "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back some of the price of the land? 4 "While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own? And after it was sold, was it not under your control? Why is it that you have conceived this deed in your heart? You have not lied to men but to God."

All three can be present and interacting:

Matthew 3:16-17 After being baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove and lighting on Him, 17 and behold, a voice out of the heavens said, "This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well-pleased."

Self-existent

A self-existent being is a being which exists in and by itself i.e., its existence is independent of any other being or any other cause. It is a being which was not brought into being by someone else or something else.

There is no higher power than God.

John 17:5 "Now, Father, glorify Me together with Yourself, with the glory which I had with You before the world was.

Revelation 4:11 "Worthy are You, our Lord and our God, to receive glory and honor and power; for You created all things, and because of Your will they existed, and were created."

Self-sufficient

A self-sufficient being is a being which can maintain oneself without outside assistance of any kind.

God needs nothing from us; everything He gives us is an expression of His grace; we cannot earn it and He does not need to give it to us to satisfy any of His own needs because He has no needs.

John 5:26 "For just as the Father has life in Himself, even so He gave to the Son also to have life in Himself;

Acts 17:25 nor is He served by human hands, as though He needed anything, since He Himself gives to all people life and breath and all things;

Spirit

Spirit is life which exists outside the physical realm. For example, it is a non-physical part of a born-again Christian.

God is not physical, yet He was willing to take on physical human flesh to die for our sins; Jesus is God in human flesh.

John 4:24 "God is spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth."

Infinite

Infinite means limitless or endless. For example, God is infinitely wise -- which means He has all human wisdom and beyond i.e. His wisdom is limitless or endless.

God is infinite, we are not. We are finite, we have limits.

1 Kings 8:27 "But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, heaven and the highest heaven cannot contain You, how much less this house which I have built!

**Psalm 147:5 Great is our Lord and abundant in strength;
His understanding is infinite.**

Eternal

Eternal means never-ending or everlasting. For example, God is from everlasting to everlasting; He was never created, and He will never come to an end.

We had a beginning, God did not. He existed before there was time, He created time and space.

**Psalm 90:2
2 Before the mountains were born
Or You gave birth to the earth and the world,
Even from everlasting to everlasting, You are God.**

Colossians 1:17 He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together.

Unchanging

Something which does not change, it is constant and never varies. God is unchanging in His attributes.

For example, one of His attributes is goodness and one of His attributes is that He is unchanging therefore He will always be good i.e., there will never be any evil in God, ever. When I think of God's unchanging attribute combined with any of His other attributes it gives me great assurance of my eternal salvation. For example, He has given me eternal salvation based on His infinite love, infinite grace, and infinite mercy; because He is unchanging in all of His attributes, I know He will never cancel my eternal salvation.

Malachi 3:6 "For I, the Lord, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed.

Hebrews 13:8 Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever.

Being

That which has conscious existence.

God is a being therefore He has conscious existence, and He is not an impersonal force like electricity or gravity.

There are many verses which testify that God is a conscious being.

Exodus 3:14 God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM"; and He said, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel, 'I AM has sent me to you.' "

John 8:58 Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am."

Wisdom

The ability to take knowledge and apply good judgment and insight in a situation. Wisdom is the godly application of knowledge.

I can trust in God's justice because He is infinitely wise and therefore will apply good judgment in all of His decisions.

**Romans 11:33 Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God!
How unsearchable are His judgments and unfathomable His ways!**

Omniscient (all knowing)

Awareness of all facts, all information, and all skills.

God is aware of all facts, all information, and all skills.

Psalm 147:5 Great is our Lord and abundant in strength;
His understanding is infinite.

Isaiah 46:9-10

9 "Remember the former things long past,
For I am God, and there is no other;
I am God, and there is no one like Me,
10 Declaring the end from the beginning,
And from ancient times things which have not been done,
Saying, 'My purpose will be established,
And I will accomplish all My good pleasure';

Romans 11:33 Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God!
How unsearchable are His judgments and unfathomable His ways!

1 John 3:20 in whatever our heart condemns us; for God is greater than our heart and knows all things.

Omnipotent (all powerful)

One who has all power.

God has all power. Any power we use was given to us by God.

Psalm 33:6 By the word of the Lord the heavens were made,
And by the breath of His mouth all their host.

Jeremiah 32:17 'Ah Lord God! Behold, You have made the heavens and the earth by Your great power and by Your outstretched arm! Nothing is too difficult for You,

John 1:12 (KJV) But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Holy

One who is worthy of total devotion because they are perfect in goodness and righteousness. Can also mean someone or something which is dedicated or set apart for service to God i.e., something set apart for a specific purpose.

God is perfect in goodness and righteousness; He has always been that way and He will always be that way, for evermore.

1 Samuel 2:2

"There is no one holy like the Lord,
Indeed, there is no one besides You,
Nor is there any rock like our God.

Isaiah 6:3

And one called out to another and said,
"Holy, Holy, Holy, is the Lord of hosts,
The whole earth is full of His glory."

Revelation 4:8 And the four living creatures, each one of them having six wings, are full of eyes around and within; and day and night they do not cease to say,
"Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God, the Almighty, who was and who is and who is to come."

Transcendence

Existence or extending beyond the physical.

God existed for all eternity, and He created time and space therefore He exists outside of time and space and inside time and space; He transcends time and space.

Revelation 4:11 "Worthy are You, our Lord and our God, to receive glory and honor and power; for You created all things, and because of Your will they existed, and were created."

Justice

The fair and impartial choice to assign rewards or punishments.

God is infinitely just therefore I know all His judgments are completely fair and impartial.

Deuteronomy 32:4

4 "The Rock! His work is perfect,
For all His ways are just;
A God of faithfulness and without injustice,
Righteous and upright is He.

Goodness

Holds the highest principles (fundamental truths) of right and wrong.

God is infinitely good and there is no evil in Him.

1 John 1:5 This is the message we have heard from Him and announce to you, that God is Light, and in Him there is no darkness at all.

Psalm 34:8 O taste and see that the Lord is good;
How blessed is the man who takes refuge in Him!

Psalm 136:1
1 Give thanks to the Lord, for He is good,
For His lovingkindness is everlasting.

Grace

The free and unearned support or gift of God.

G.R.A.C.E. = God's Riches At Christ's Expense.

Human salvation is an unearned gift from God; it is an expression of His infinite grace.

Psalm 145:8 The Lord is gracious and merciful;
Slow to anger and great in lovingkindness.

John 1:14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Truth

Being in perfect alignment with fact and reality.

God is infinitely truthful. There is no deception within God.

Psalm 119:160 The sum of Your word is truth,
And every one of Your righteous ordinances is everlasting.

John 1:14 And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Omnipresent

Omnipresent is being present in all places at the same time, always.

God is always present in all places; He also transcends space and time and is eternally present everywhere outside time and space. Anywhere you go, God is already there and has always been there and always will be there.

Jeremiah 23:24

24 "Can a man hide himself in hiding places
So I do not see him?" declares the Lord.
"Do I not fill the heavens and the earth?" declares the Lord.

Psalms 139:7-10

7 Where can I go from Your Spirit?
Or where can I flee from Your presence?
8 If I ascend to heaven, You are there;
If I make my bed in Sheol [Hell], behold, You are there.
9 If I take the wings of the dawn,
If I dwell in the remotest part of the sea,
10 Even there Your hand will lead me,
And Your right hand will lay hold of me.

Faithful

One who keeps promises and remains loyal.

God keeps His promises and is loyal for eternity.

Lamentations 3:22-23

22 The Lord's lovingkindnesses indeed never cease,
For His compassions never fail.
23 They are new every morning;
Great is Your faithfulness.

Deuteronomy 7:9 "Know therefore that the Lord your God, He is God, the faithful God,
who keeps His covenant and His lovingkindness to a thousandth generation with those
who love Him and keep His commandments;

2 Timothy 2:13 If we are faithless, He remains faithful, for He cannot deny Himself.

Mercy

Compassion shown to an offender.

God's infinite mercy was expressed in the giving of His gift of salvation to condemned sinners.

Romans 9:15-16 For He says to Moses, "I will have mercy on whom I have mercy, and I
will have compassion on whom I have compassion." 16 So then it does not depend on the
man who wills or the man who runs, but on God who has mercy.

Ephesians 2:4 But God, being rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved
us,

Love

An intense feeling of deep affection arising out of family relationships or personal ties.

Those who are saved have become the children of God therefore God has a deep affection arising out of a family relationship.

John 3:16 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.

Romans 5:8 But God demonstrates His own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

1 John 4:7-8 Beloved, let us love one another, for love is from God; and everyone who loves is born of God and knows God. **8** The one who does not love does not know God, for God is love.

Sovereign

One who possesses supreme power.

God is above all others; He holds power over all others. No one has power over God. God holds control over everyone and everything.

Psalm 103:19

19 The Lord has established His throne in the heavens,
And His sovereignty rules over all.

1 Chronicles 29:11-12

11 "Yours, O Lord, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the victory and the majesty, indeed everything that is in the heavens and the earth; Yours is the dominion, O Lord, and You exalt Yourself as head over all.

12 "Both riches and honor come from You, and You rule over all, and in Your hand is power and might; and it lies in Your hand to make great and to strengthen everyone.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

To memorize the attributes of God, try the following suggested memory pictures which are an expansion and adaptation of the pictures first suggested by Graham Best.

ATTRIBUTE	SUGGESTED MEMORY PICTURE
Trinity	Tricycle
Self-existent	Super Elf (S-Elf) hops on tricycle and goes out Exit
Self-sufficient	Super Elf starts stuffing his face (Self-stuff-icient)
Spirit	Spear flies out and sticks in a wall (Spear-it)
Infinite	Infant is hanging by hands on spear
Eternal	Infant turning around having fun on the spear (E-turn-al)
Unchanging	Change (coins) fly out of infant's diapers
Being	Change lands on a bee hive (Bee-ing)
Wisdom	Bees fly out and land on a pile of cheese wiz (Wiz-dom)
Omniscient	Bunch of books sticking out of the cheese wiz (all knowing)
Omnipotent	Man standing in cheese wiz holding a power saw (all powerful)
Holy	Man uses saw to cut a hole in a wall next to him
Transcendence	Suddenly the man goes into a trance
Justice	In the trance he throws just-ice through the hole in wall
Goodness	Ice lands in a bowl of Campbell's soup which is m-m-m good
Grace	A piece of lace is laying in the bowl of soup
Truth	Lifting out the lace you see a tooth hanging off the end
Omnipresent	Tooth jumps off and hides in a big pile of gift wrapped presents
Faithful	Kids have faces full of anticipation for the gifts (Face-full)
Mercy	Children are begging you for mercy on their knees to open them
Love	First present opened is a huge heart, 50 feet high
Sovereign	Right at the top of the heart is a saw cutting through the middle (Saw-vereign)

Once you have memorized all the attributes of God you can recall them as you are waiting in a line up or sitting in a traffic jam or even when you are in bed trying to fall asleep.

As you recall each attribute, I suggest you contemplate some of His other attributes. For example, when you think about God's goodness recall that He is infinite, therefore He is infinitely good. And recall that He is unchanging in His attributes, therefore He has always been infinitely good, and He will always be infinitely good. Think about what it means that He is infinitely good i.e., there is no evil in Him and since He is unchanging in His attributes there will never be any evil in Him. What a marvelous assurance of our salvation it is to realize that our infinitely good God has given us salvation and our infinitely faithful God will always keep His promises.

Chapter 39: Evil And Human Suffering

One of the most common objections to God is usually phrased as the question: What about evil and human suffering? Or as the question: How can a good God allow human suffering?

Many good answers have been put forward, through centuries, to answer these questions. Anyone who attempts to use such questions thinking there are not any good answers has either never taken the time to look for such answers or is fooling himself. There are many good books available from theologians and apologists which do provide good answers. I recommend the book: *When Skeptics Ask* by Norman L. Geisler and Ronald M. Brooks, published by Victor Books ISBN: 0-89693-766-6. This chapter draws heavily on that book.

https://www.amazon.com/When-Skeptics-Ask-Christian-Evidences/dp/0801014980/ref=sr_1_1?crd=1O5L4IWC7RC6P&keywords=When+Skeptics+Ask&qid=1656441978&sprefix=when+ske+ptics+ask+%2Caps%2C109&sr=8-1

This chapter seeks to address the following questions:

- What is evil?
- Where did evil come from?
- Why can't evil be stopped?
- What is the purpose of evil?
- Does there have to be so much evil?
- Couldn't God make a world without evil?
- Then why did God choose this world?

What Is Evil?

Some people think evil is bad actions by people; acts such as murder or rape are considered evil. Some people say some people are evil; people such as Hitler or Stalin, or other mass murderers or serial killers. Some people even say certain diseases are evil; diseases such as blindness or AIDS. Other people say evil is like a virus which infects things. Still other people say evil is like a bad force in the universe; they say there is a good force and a bad force in the universe and evil is another name for the bad or negative force. Still other people say evil is just a thing created by God. They argue as follows:

1. Evil is a thing.
2. God created everything.
3. Therefore, God created evil.

However, their argument fails because evil is not a thing. There are no evil molecules or atoms; you cannot put a piece of evil under a microscope and study it. Evil is not a thing. Simply put, **evil is a lack of something good which should be present.** It is a lack of something good which should be in something. For example: I can pick up a good gun, put in a good bullet, point it at your good head, put my good finger, on the good trigger, and give it a good pull, but a bad relationship exists because something is lacking. The lack in this example comes about because the things are not being used as they ought to be. Guns should not be used for indiscriminate killing. Your head was not meant for target practice. Ultimately, if a person lacks kindness in his heart and respect for human life then he can and may commit murder. It is good to respect human life; if that good value is lacking in someone's world view, then they can and may commit murder.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Some people say all evil is disobedience of one or more of God's laws i.e., the Ten Commandments. But the Bible teaches that evil, sin, is more than the disobedience of God's law. To gain a deeper understanding of how evil is a lack of something good which should be present consider the Bible verse:

Romans 14:23 But he who doubts is condemned if he eats, because his eating is not from faith; and whatever is not from faith is sin.

The apostle Paul, in Romans, explains that sin, evil, is more than the disobedience of God's law; whatever you do if you do not do it from a place of faith then it is sin.

Where Did Evil Come from?

When God created man, man was perfect. God chose to create man as a free creature; meaning man was given free will. God gave man free will so that man could chose to be in a loving relationship with God and so man could demonstrate faith in God. True love and faith require free will.

Galatians 5:6 For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision means anything, but faith working through love.

1. God made everything perfect.
2. One of the perfect things God made was free creatures.
3. Free will is the cause of evil.
4. So, imperfection (evil) can arise from perfection (not directly, but indirectly through freedom).

God created the **fact** of freedom; we perform the **acts** of freedom.

God made evil **possible**; humans made evil **actual**.

Evil and human suffering came through the abuse of our moral perfection as free creatures.

Why Can't Evil Be Stopped?

A common question is: Why can't God just stop evil? They may say: If there is an all-good, all-powerful God then why is there evil? Some people even try to use the existence of evil to argue that God cannot be both all-good and all-powerful. Their argument is as follows:

1. If God is all-good, He would **destroy** evil.
2. If God is all-powerful, He could **destroy** evil.
3. But evil is not **destroyed**.
4. Hence, there is no such God.

Another more interesting question is: If there is an all-good, all-powerful God then why are there atheists? The answer to both questions is the same: Free will.

Evil cannot be destroyed without destroying freedom, since evil arises from free creatures. Free beings are the cause of evil, and freedom was given to us so that we could love God and our fellow man.

Love is the greatest good for all free creatures, but love is impossible without freedom i.e., free will.

John 15:13 "Greater love has no one than this, that one lay down his life for his friends."

Matthew 22:36–40 "Teacher, which is the great commandment in the Law?" 37 And He said to him, " 'You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind.' 38 "This is the great and foremost commandment. 39 "The second is like it, 'You shall love your neighbor as yourself.' 40 "On these two commandments depend the whole Law and the Prophets."

If freedom were destroyed to end evil then that would be evil, because it would deprive free creatures of their greatest good. Hence to destroy evil would be evil.

If evil is to be dealt with then we need to talk about it being defeated, not destroyed.

The argument against God from the existence of evil makes some arrogant assumptions. Just because evil is not destroyed right now does not mean that it will never be destroyed. The argument implies that if God hasn't done anything as of today, then it won't ever happen. This assumes that they have some inside information about the future. Either the person does not recognize what God has done and is doing about evil or they do not believe what God has done and is doing about evil.

A restatement of the argument to correct for the oversight in temporal perspective is as follows:

1. If God is all-good, He will **defeat** evil.
2. If God is all-powerful, He can **defeat** evil.
3. Evil is not yet **defeated**.
4. Therefore, God can and will one day **defeat** evil.

The very argument used against God turns out to be a vindication of God.

God is not yet finished; you'll just have to wait. God would rather wrestle with our rebellious wills than reign supreme over rocks and trees.

Delivered from the penalty of sin, evil

When man sinned he was under the penalty of sin which is spiritual death. Jesus Christ's sinless life and His sacrificial death on the cross delivered born again Christians from the penalty of sin. God **defeated** evil at the cross.

Delivered from the power of sin, evil

When born again Christians are led by the indwelling Holy Spirit they are delivered from the power of sin.

Delivered from the presence of sin, evil

When God gives born again Christians a new glorified human body they will be delivered from the presence of sin for eternity.

What Is the Purpose of Evil?

Some people try to use suffering as an argument against God being all-good. Their argument is as follows:

1. There is no good purpose for suffering.
2. An all-good God must have a good purpose for everything.
3. So, there cannot be an all-good God.

There is a difference between our knowing the purpose for evil and God having a purpose for it. Even though we don't know God's purpose, He may still have a good reason for allowing evil in our lives. We cannot assume that there is no good purpose for something just because we don't know what it could be. For example: A father takes a child to have a vaccination. The child looks up to the father who tells the child that even though the needle hurts there is a good reason for it. The child has no concept of an increase to their immunity from the vaccination. All the child knows at that moment is that the needle is scary and it hurts. But there is a very good reason for the endurance of the pain. Another example could be that of dental freezing or dental anesthetic; again, some pain is experienced from the injection, but it produces the temporary loss of feeling in part of the mouth. There is a good purpose for the brief pain the dentist inflicts.

Victims of the disease leprosy experience a loss of pain in their extremities. As a result, often they receive injuries that would have been avoided had they felt pain. For example, they may pick up a hot pot but because they have no feeling of pain, they hold on to the pot longer and experience a more severe burn. So, pain serves a purpose to warn us of danger.

The Bible gives us the example of Joseph. He was sold into slavery by his brothers. As a result, Joseph suffered for many years. But ultimately, he was able to give aid to his starving family and people; God's word includes a very powerful verse regarding how pain and suffering, evil, can serve a greater purpose. Joseph understood that God had a purpose for suffering:

Genesis 50:20 "As for you, you meant evil against me, but God meant it for good in order to bring about this present result, to preserve many people alive."

That is why in the face of evil and human suffering, true faithful Christians know God has a purpose in all things including evil and human suffering:

Romans 8:18 For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory that is to be revealed to us.

Romans 8:28 And we know that God causes all things to work together for good to those who love God, to those who are called according to His purpose.

Sickness and even death are for God's glory.

John 9:1-3 As He passed by, He saw a man blind from birth. 2 And His disciples asked Him, "Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, that he would be born blind?" 3 Jesus answered, "It was neither that this man sinned, nor his parents; but it was so that the works of God might be displayed in him."

John 11:3-4 So the sisters sent word to Him, saying, "Lord, behold, he whom You love is sick." 4 But when Jesus heard this, He said, "This sickness is not to end in death, but for the glory of God, so that the Son of God may be glorified by it."

Think of the following: God does not require us to go through anything He is not willing to do Himself. Jesus Christ is God in human flesh. The ultimate evil, Jesus' death on the cross, resulted in the ultimate good, eternal life for all those who believe in Jesus Christ as their personal Savior and Lord.

John 15:13 "Greater love has no one than this, that one lay down his life for his friends.

Romans 5:10 For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God through the death of His Son, much more, having been reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.

Does there have to be so much evil?

Some people accept that there must be evil in the world because God created free creatures who chose not to have faith in God and as a result, they commit evil. But they go on to say: does there have to be so much evil? They say: couldn't there have been fewer murders or fewer rapes or fewer drunk drivers? Of course, that could be extended until there was no evil at all. Of course, the only way God could reduce the level of evil would be to tamper with free will and the only way to achieve no evil at all would be to never create creatures with free will. But, if that were done then the greatest love could never be achieved, see John 15:13 above.

Believe it or not, some people use a similar thought to argue that God will not send anyone to hell. The argument goes as follows:

1. The greatest good would be for all people to be saved and be given eternal life.
2. Even one person in hell would be less than the greatest good.
3. Therefore, God cannot send anyone to hell.

The problem with the argument is that the person does not understand the true nature of fallen man or what God has done so that people do not need to go to hell.

Firstly, regarding the true nature of fallen man, all people are born spiritually dead which means they are separated from God and cannot be reconciled to God by anything they do. Therefore, when they die, they go to hell; God does not need to send them there; they are already going there. They cannot go to heaven because they are spiritually dead in their sins.

Genesis 5:3 When Adam had lived one hundred and thirty years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, according to his image, and named him Seth.

Secondly, the person does not understand what God has done so a person does not need to go to hell. A person goes to hell only because they have rejected what God did for them so that they do not need to go to hell.

John 3:16 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.

2 Peter 3:9 The Lord is not slow about His promise, as some count slowness, but is patient toward you, not wishing for any to perish but for all to come to repentance.

- In heaven, true born-again Christians say to God: "Thy will be done".
- God says to unbelievers in hell: "Thy will be done".

In other words, people in hell exercised their free will while alive on the earth to reject what God did for them so they would not have to go to hell. God respects their free will choice to reject His sacrifice for their sins. He does not send them to hell; He lets them go to the only place a spiritually dead person can go when they die.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

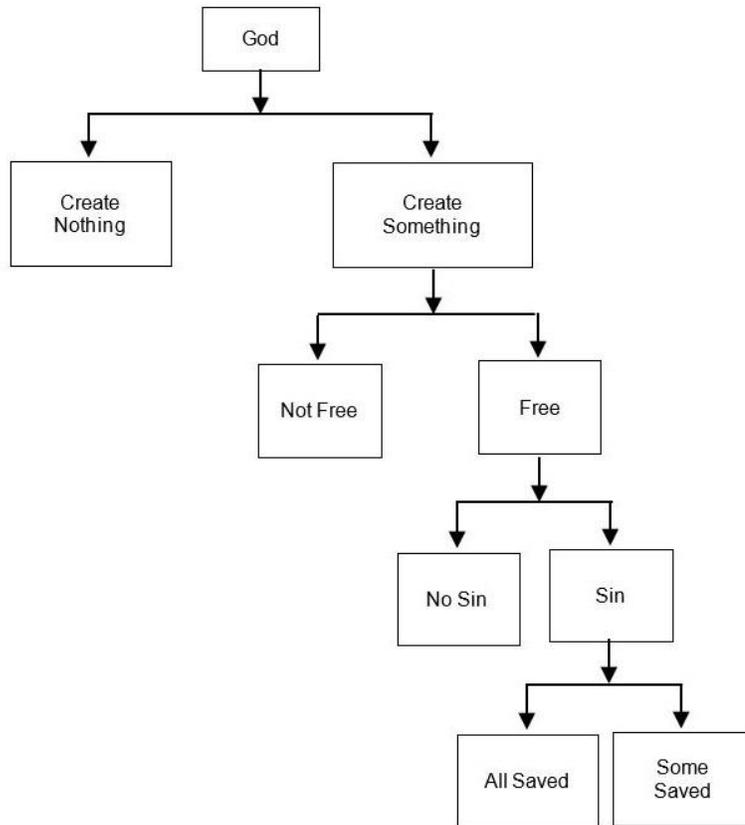
The only way to ensure fewer murders or fewer rapes or fewer drunk drivers is to tamper with free will. He does not want to interfere with free will.

Couldn't God make a world without evil?

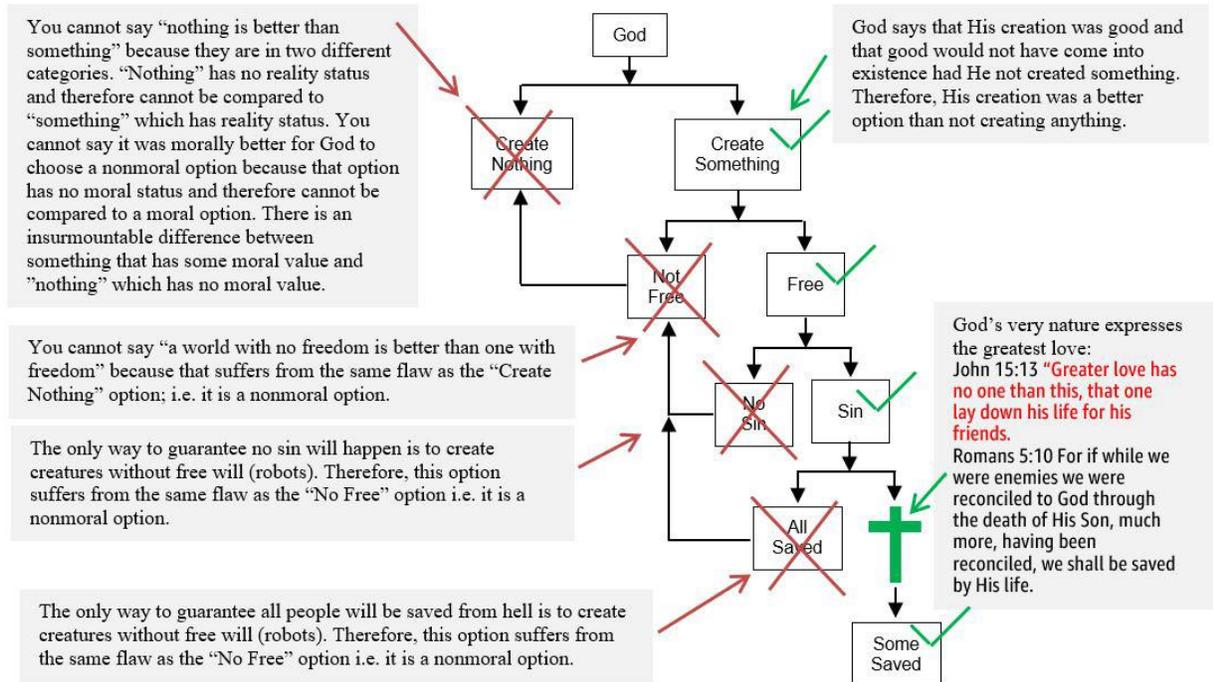
Some people argue that God could have made a world without evil. The argument goes something like this:

1. God knows everything.
2. God knew evil would occur in the world He created.
3. God had non-evil possibilities; He could have chosen to:
 - a. not create anything.
 - b. create a world without free creatures.
 - c. create a world with free creatures but without sin.
 - d. create a world with free creatures but with sin but all get saved in the end.
4. Therefore, God could have created a world without evil or hell.

The following diagram graphically depicts the argument:



But we must consider two things in response to such an argument. First would such a world be better than this world? And secondly, would God want to create such a world? Essentially, the question is: Are the non-evil options better than the world He did create?



Why did God choose this world?

To preserve free will, to defeat evil, and to achieve the greatest good, God chose the best way to the best world. Only a world with free will allows us to enter willingly into a loving relationship with God our Creator and with fellow human beings. God is willing to put up with evil and atheists to bring fallen humanity into a free will loving relationship with Him.

God will one day judge all evil; that day is known as judgment day. Evil committed by true born-again believers, Christians, has already been judged. When a true believer accepts Jesus Christ as their Savior the punishment for all their sins, their evil, was taken by Jesus Christ on the cross. The penalty for their evil was paid by Jesus. However, non-Christians must pay for their evil, their sins. The day that happens is known as judgment day.

On judgment day, all decisions will be made permanent:

- Christians will go into the best world. We will experience **eternal life** in a loving relationship with God our Creator and with fellow born-again Christians as well as with faithful spirits.
- Non-Christians, and all fallen spirits, will go into eternal quarantine i.e., into the Lake of Fire. They will experience **eternal death**, also known as the Second Death, i.e., conscious, and eternal punishment in a place with no pleasure or happiness or joy, ever.

God does not ask us to endure anything He is not willing to endure Himself.

Mark 8:31–33 And He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again. 32 And He was stating the matter plainly. And Peter took Him aside and began to rebuke Him. 33 But turning around and seeing His disciples, He rebuked Peter and *said, "Get behind Me, Satan; for you are not setting your mind on God's interests, but man's."

In His response to Job, God answers the question: What about evil and human suffering?

Essentially God said to Job: Who do you think you are?

**Job 38:4 "Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth?
Tell Me, if you have understanding,**

In the New Testament we read about someone questioning God:

**Romans 9:20 On the contrary, who are you, O man, who answers back to God? The thing
molded will not say to the molder, "Why did you make me like this," will it?**

After two chapters of outlining some of what God can do, God and Job interact:

**Job 40:1-8 1 Then the Lord said to Job,
2 "Will the faultfinder contend with the Almighty?
Let him who reproves God answer it."
3 Then Job answered the Lord and said,
4 "Behold, I am insignificant; what can I reply to You?
I lay my hand on my mouth.
5 "Once I have spoken, and I will not answer;
Even twice, and I will add nothing more."
6 Then the Lord answered Job out of the storm and said,
7 "Now gird up your loins like a man;
I will ask you, and you instruct Me.
8 "Will you really annul My judgment?
Will you condemn Me that you may be justified?"**

God goes on for two more chapters pointing out more about some of His greatness and then Job finally responds:

**Job 42:1-6 1 Then Job answered the Lord and said,
2 "I know that You can do all things,
And that no purpose of Yours can be thwarted.
3 'Who is this that hides counsel without knowledge?'
"Therefore I have declared that which I did not understand,
Things too wonderful for me, which I did not know."
4 'Hear, now, and I will speak;
I will ask You, and You instruct me.'
5 "I have heard of You by the hearing of the ear;
But now my eye sees You;
6 Therefore I retract,
And I repent in dust and ashes."**

Essentially, Job repents and realizes:

- No amount of suffering gives man the right to question God's infinite wisdom.
- God did not need man's advice during the creation of the world.

We must:

- Accept God on His terms not on our terms.
- Love God, unconditionally.
- Have faith in God, unconditionally.

A Serious Warning

If you reject what God has already done to defeat evil, then be warned.

Hebrews 10:29-31 **How much severer punishment do you think he will deserve who has trampled under foot the Son of God,** and has regarded as unclean the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and has insulted the Spirit of grace? 30 For we know Him who said, "Vengeance is Mine, I will repay." And again, "The Lord will judge His people." 31 **It is a terrifying thing to fall into the hands of the living God.**

Summary/Review of the responses to: What about evil and human suffering?

What is evil?

Evil is a lack of something good that should be present. Ultimately, it is a lack of faith in God.

Romans 14:23 **But he who doubts is condemned if he eats, because *his eating is* not from faith; and **whatever is not from faith is sin.****

Where did evil come from?

God created perfect creatures with free will to enter a loving relationship with Him and with other humans. Free will is the cause of evil.

God created the **fact** of freedom; we perform the **acts** of freedom.

God made evil **possible**; humans made evil **actual**.

Why can't evil be stopped?

Evil cannot be destroyed without destroying free will. God is defeating evil while preserving free will.

What is the purpose of evil?

There is a difference between God having a purpose and you knowing that purpose. There are several purposes for pain; some examples are: vaccinations, dental anesthetic, achieving a greater good e.g., Joseph.

Genesis 50:20 **"As for you, **you meant evil against me, but God meant it for good** in order to bring about this present result, to preserve many people alive.**

Does there have to be so much evil?

Evil can only be reduced if God tampers with free will. God does not want to interfere with free will.

Couldn't God make a world without evil?

You cannot say nothing is better than something. You cannot say no free will is better than free will. You cannot say a nonmoral option is morally better than a moral option.

Then why did God choose this world?

It is the best way to the best world.

When Job questioned God's wisdom, God answered him, and Job was terrified.

Essentially God said to Job: Who do you think you are?

Job 38:4 **"Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth?
Tell Me, if you have understanding,**

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

God is permitting evil, atheists, and human suffering, to achieve a greater good i.e., the saving of many souls. God does not ask us to go through anything He is not willing to do Himself. He endured the ultimate evil, His own death on the cross, to achieve the ultimate good i.e., eternal life for many people. Christians escape the Lake of Fire because Jesus Christ was willing to endure the ultimate evil.

In the introduction I said the “problem” of evil and human suffering is probably the most common objection to Christianity. It is also the greatest opportunity for believers to demonstrate faith in God. We demonstrate faith in God by trusting that God knows what He is doing, even when we face evil and human suffering. To not demonstrate such faith would be evil.

Imagine if you were one of Christ’s followers and you saw Him die on a cross and be laid in a tomb. Between His death and resurrection none of His believers understood God’s purpose. Even before His death on the cross, Jesus told them what was to happen. Jesus rebuked Peter because essentially Peter lacked faith in the wisdom of God.

Mark 8:31–33 And He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and be killed, and after three days rise again. 32 And He was stating the matter plainly. And Peter took Him aside and began to rebuke Him. 33 But turning around and seeing His disciples, He rebuked Peter and *said, “Get behind Me, Satan; for you are not setting your mind on God’s interests, but man’s.”

If you had been there, would you too have doubted God’s wisdom? Would you have thought God doesn’t know what He is doing? Would you be thinking there could be no purpose for Christ’s suffering and death? Would you have seen the events from a human perspective or from God’s perspective? I know a way to figure out how you would have reacted to those events – it would have been the same way you react to evil, suffering, and death in your life today. Do you doubt God knows what He is doing? Do you demonstrate faith and trust in our God’s infinite wisdom and that He does know what He is doing?

Why did God create this world? He tells us the answer in His Word:

Revelation 4:11 Worthy are You, our Lord and our God, to receive glory and honor and power; for You created all things, and because of Your will they existed, and were created.”

This life is hard. We all experience pain, suffering, and death. But our gracious Creator has infinite wisdom, and He knows the best way to the best world – in Him I place all my faith. Do you?

The first part of this chapter draws heavily from the book: *When Skeptics Ask* by Norman L. Geisler and Ronald M. Brooks, published by Victor Books ISBN: 0-89693-766-6. Geisler makes convincing arguments for theodicy - - the answer to why a good God permits the manifestation of evil. The remainder of this chapter represents my thoughts relating to why God created this world.

In short, God created this world so we could experience an eternal loving relationship with Him.

God allows evil to exist in this world. He also provided prophets and apostles to teach us what He is like. God did not create evil; but the existence of evil combined with prophets and apostles, teaches us what God is like, which in turn, allows us to experience a loving relationship with the one true God.

When we learn how much He loves us we can exercise our free will and love Him in return.

God is a trinity: God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. This world allows us to exercise free will. As a result, every human being at times will choose to do evil and at times to do good. We sin against God the Father, we are convicted of sin by God the Holy Spirit, and through the sinless life, death, and resurrection of God the Son, we are offered salvation from the penalty of our sins.

God is self-existent. By having consciousness in this evil, fallen, world we can realize God must be self-existent; only such a being could create the universe.

God is self-sufficient. We can only get some idea of what infinite grace is if a self-sufficient being gives us a gift. So, when God gives us salvation as a gift, we can know how it feels to experience true grace and experience the greatest love, the type of love mentioned in John 15:13

John 15:13 "Greater love has no one than this, that one lay down his life for his friends."

God is spirit. We can only understand what a spirit is by passing from a spiritually dead state through this spiritually dead world to a spiritually alive state in Jesus Christ.

God is infinite. We are finite. Only by living as finite beings can we gain any notion of what an infinite being is like. He is the opposite of us in terms of our finite nature.

God is eternal, we are not, we had a beginning, He did not have a beginning because He was not created. Those who become true born again Christians are given eternal life. After death, Christians will leave this physical realm and pass into the spiritual realm; that will be how we will better understand the nature of eternity. Only by first experiencing the time and space God created can we better understand the nature of eternity.

God is unchanging in terms of His attributes. For example, God is truth and since He is unchanging, He will never lie. In this world we change our values and morals. Someone who has been loving and trustworthy can change towards us and hurt us. It is only by living in this evil, fallen, world can we understand what a truly stable and reliable being is like.

God has infinite wisdom. Only a being with infinite wisdom could create a world in which He dies to save us. It is precisely what we with finite wisdom would have never invented. In that way we can gain some idea of what infinite wisdom is like.

God is omniscient. He has infinite knowledge. The prophecies in the Bible allow us to know that He has infinite knowledge.

God is omnipotent; He is all-powerful. Only an all-powerful being could create and sustain this universe.

God is holy. It is only by living in this evil, fallen, world can we get some understanding of what true holiness is.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

God is transcendent. It is only by living in the physical realm and encountering God can we gain an understanding of what transcendence is. Because, when we die, we leave the physical realm and enter the spiritual realm; we will discover the Bible was correct when it described God as transcendent because He will already be there when we get there.

God is justice. In this world, God has given us a conscience, an understanding of right and wrong, of good and evil. The sacrificial death of Jesus Christ teaches us how deep the justice of God is. Evil must be judged. It is only by living in this evil, fallen, world and knowing all our sins were placed on God the Son to satisfy God's justice can we learn what true justice, love, mercy, and grace are.

God is a good being. We never would have been able to deeply understand a truly good being unless we had experienced this evil, fallen, world.

God is grace. The only way we can experience a true unmerited gift from God, which is grace, is by being born spiritually dead and then being given salvation as a gift. Jesus Christ's sinless life, and subsequent death, pays the penalty for your sins and satisfies God's justice, provided you accept Jesus Christ's work as payment for your sins. God's infinite grace is expressed through His gift of salvation.

God is truth. The only way we can deeply understand what truth is comes from first living in this evil, fallen, world. We have all lied to others and others have lied to us.

God is omnipresent. When we leave this world, the physical realm, we will realize God is also in the spiritual realm.

God is faithful. The word of God, the Bible, laid out prophecies hundreds of years before they were fulfilled. Many of those prophecies were about Jesus Christ. Therefore, living in this evil world, we can know that God is faithful to fulfill His promises to us.

God is mercy. Earlier I mentioned that God is self-sufficient. God does not need anything from anyone. Therefore, His gift of salvation is an act of infinite mercy towards us.

God is love. It is through this evil world that we can experience God's love and gift of salvation through Jesus Christ. God the Son is God in human flesh; He suffered and died for us. God does not ask us to go through anything He is not willing to do Himself.

John 3:16 - 21 16 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life. 17 "For God did not send the Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world might be saved through Him. 18 "He who believes in Him is not judged; he who does not believe has been judged already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. 19 "This is the judgment, that the Light has come into the world, and men loved the darkness rather than the Light, for their deeds were evil. 20 "For everyone who does evil hates the Light, and does not come to the Light for fear that his deeds will be exposed. 21 "But he who practices the truth comes to the Light, so that his deeds may be manifested as having been wrought in God."

God is sovereign. Whether you are a Christian or not, when you die you will understand that God is truly sovereign. Part of why you will understand is because you experienced this evil world. For Christians, physical death will allow us to continue our loving relationship with God Almighty. For non-Christians, physical death will position them in a place of unending torment as punishment for their sins. Part of their torment will be the realization that they did not accept the gift of salvation through Jesus Christ when they had the chance.

It is only through this evil, fallen, world that we have the opportunity to exercise free will and accept the gift of salvation through Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh. It is only because God is infinite eternal love and justice that the opportunity to experience an eternal loving relationship with Him is made possible.

Chapter 40: The Greatest Act Of Love

In the earlier chapter *Evil And Human Suffering* I explained how there can be a purpose for evil and human suffering. The killing of Jesus Christ was the greatest act of evil ever done; but it resulted in the greatest act of love. The result was the reconciliation of human souls with their Creator.

God took on human flesh and died for me.

Romans 5:10 For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God through the death of His Son, much more, having been reconciled, we shall be saved by His life.

John 3:16 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life.

To begin to get an idea of how God loves you, please read the following verses:

1 Corinthians 13:4-8 Love is patient, love is kind and is not jealous; love does not brag and is not arrogant, 5 does not act unbecomingly; it does not seek its own, is not provoked, does not take into account a wrong suffered, 6 does not rejoice in unrighteousness, but rejoices with the truth; 7 bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things. 8 Love never fails; but if there are gifts of prophecy, they will be done away; if there are tongues, they will cease; if there is knowledge, it will be done away.

Having been reconciled to God, He has made us His children.

1 John 3:1 See how great a love the Father has bestowed on us, that we would be called children of God; and such we are.

Chapter 41: Heaven Is Real

I know I will be in heaven when every thought and every action of mine is in perfect accordance with God's will.

Isaiah 65:17

17 "For behold, I create new heavens and a new earth;
And the former things will not be remembered or come to mind.

Psalms 16:11

11 You will make known to me the path of life;
In Your presence is fullness of joy;
In Your right hand there are pleasures forever.

Matthew 6:19–21 "Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal. 20 "But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break in or steal; 21 for where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

John 14:2–3 "In My Father's house are many dwelling places; if it were not so, I would have told you; for I go to prepare a place for you. 3 "If I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to Myself, that where I am, there you may be also.

Philippians 3:20–21 For our citizenship is in heaven, from which also we eagerly wait for a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ; 21 who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His glory, by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.

1 Corinthians 2:9

9 but just as it is written,
"Things which eye has not seen and ear has not heard,
And which have not entered the heart of man,
All that God has prepared for those who love Him."

1 Corinthians 15:50 Now I say this, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God; nor does the perishable inherit the imperishable.

Hebrews 11:16 But as it is, they desire a better country, that is, a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed to be called their God; for He has prepared a city for them.

Hebrews 12:22–23 But you have come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to myriads of angels, 23 to the general assembly and church of the firstborn who are enrolled in heaven, and to God, the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the righteous made perfect,

1 Peter 1:4 to obtain an inheritance which is imperishable and undefiled and will not fade away, reserved in heaven for you,

2 Peter 3:13 But according to His promise we are looking for new heavens and a new earth, in which righteousness dwells.

Revelation 2:7 'He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To him who overcomes, I will grant to eat of the tree of life which is in the Paradise of God.'

Revelation 7:9–10 After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude which no one could count, from every nation and all tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, clothed in white robes, and palm branches were in their hands; 10 and they cry out with a loud voice, saying, "Salvation to our God who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb."

Revelation 7:15–17 "For this reason, they are before the throne of God; and they serve Him day and night in His temple; and He who sits on the throne will spread His tabernacle over them. 16 "They will hunger no longer, nor thirst anymore; nor will the sun beat down on them, nor any heat; 17 for the Lamb in the center of the throne will be their shepherd, and will guide them to springs of the water of life; and God will wipe every tear from their eyes."

Revelation 11:19 And the temple of God which is in heaven was opened; and the ark of His covenant appeared in His temple, and there were flashes of lightning and sounds and peals of thunder and an earthquake and a great hailstorm.

Revelation 14:13 And I heard a voice from heaven, saying, "Write, 'Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord from now on!' " "Yes," says the Spirit, "so that they may rest from their labors, for their deeds follow with them."

Revelation 21:4 and He will wipe away every tear from their eyes; and there will no longer be any death; there will no longer be any mourning, or crying, or pain; the first things have passed away."

The New Jerusalem

Revelation 21:10–27 And he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, 11 having the glory of God. Her brilliance was like a very costly stone, as a stone of crystal-clear jasper. 12 It had a great and high wall, with twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels; and names were written on them, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the sons of Israel. 13 There were three gates on the east and three gates on the north and three gates on the south and three gates on the west. 14 And the wall of the city had twelve foundation stones, and on them were the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. 15 The one who spoke with me had a gold measuring rod to measure the city, and its gates and its wall. 16 The city is laid out as a square, and its length is as great as the width; and he measured the city with the rod, fifteen hundred miles; its length and width and height are equal. 17 And he measured its wall, seventy-two yards, according to human measurements, which are also angelic measurements. 18 The material of the wall was jasper; and the city was pure gold, like clear glass. 19 The foundation stones of the city wall were adorned with every kind of precious stone. The first foundation stone was

jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, chalcedony; the fourth, emerald; 20 the fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, topaz; the tenth, chrysoprase; the eleventh, jacinth; the twelfth, amethyst. 21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls; each one of the gates was a single pearl. And the street of the city was pure gold, like transparent glass. 22 I saw no temple in it, for the Lord God the Almighty and the Lamb are its temple. 23 And the city has no need of the sun or of the moon to shine on it, for the glory of God has illumined it, and its lamp is the Lamb. 24 The nations will walk by its light, and the kings of the earth will bring their glory into it. 25 In the daytime (for there will be no night there) its gates will never be closed; 26 and they will bring the glory and the honor of the nations into it; 27 and nothing unclean, and no one who practices abomination and lying, shall ever come into it, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's book of life.

The River and the Tree of Life

Revelation 22:1–5 Then he showed me a river of the water of life, clear as crystal, coming from the throne of God and of the Lamb, 2 in the middle of its street. On either side of the river was the tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruit, yielding its fruit every month; and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. 3 There will no longer be any curse; and the throne of God and of the Lamb will be in it, and His bond-servants will serve Him; 4 they will see His face, and His name will be on their foreheads. 5 And there will no longer be any night; and they will not have need of the light of a lamp nor the light of the sun, because the Lord God will illumine them; and they will reign forever and ever.

Chapter 42: Hell Is Real

Anyone who does not believe hell exists most likely also:

- does not believe what the Bible teaches on other topics.
- is not a true born-again believer.
- has a misconception of what God is really like.

A **common misconception** such people say is: “God is love and therefore He won’t send anyone to hell”. The problem with that thinking is while it is true that God is love, they do not understand that is not all that God is; one of His other attributes is justice, infinite justice, in fact. God will judge the sin and unfaithfulness of mankind. Non-Christians go to a real hell when they die and, after the great white throne judgment, they will be cast into the Lake of Fire for all eternity; there will be no escape, ever.

Revelation 20:11–15 Then I saw a great white throne and Him who sat upon it, from whose presence earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. 12 And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life; and the dead were judged from the things which were written in the books, according to their deeds. 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead which were in them; and they were judged, every one of them according to their deeds. 14 Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire. 15 And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

The only way to have your name written in the book of life is to repent of your sins and accept Jesus Christ as your personal Lord and Savior, which means, you trust in what Jesus did to pay for your sins and you are NOT trusting in your good works to make yourself acceptable to God. You must also understand that you will be alive and conscious while in the lake of fire for all eternity as you suffer punishment, which is God’s judgment on non-Christians.

The following verses and section headings are taken from Bill Weise’s book *23 Minutes in Hell* (10th Anniversary Edition) published by Charisma House.

Please note the following:

- the word **Sheol** (in English translations of the Bible) means the netherworld or realm of the dead; in the passages quoted in this chapter it may be interpreted as meaning hell.
- the word **Abaddon** (in English translations of the Bible) means the place of destruction; in the passages quoted in this chapter it may be interpreted as meaning hell.
- the word **Hades** (in English translations of the Bible) means hell.

Appointed or Assigned

1 Kings 20:42 He said to him, "Thus says the Lord, 'Because you have let go out of your hand the man whom I had devoted to destruction, therefore your life shall go for his life, and your people for his people.' "

Job 21:17 "How often is the lamp of the wicked put out,
Or does their calamity fall on them?
Does God apportion destruction in His anger?

Proverbs 31:8 (KJV) Open thy mouth for the dumb in the cause of all such as are appointed to destruction.

Matthew 24:51 and will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Luke 12:46 the master of that slave will come on a day when he does not expect him and at an hour he does not know, and will cut him in pieces, and assign him a place with the unbelievers.

Revelation 21:8 "But for the cowardly and unbelieving and abominable and murderers and immoral persons and sorcerers and idolaters and all liars, their part will be in the lake that burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death."

Body in hell

Proverbs 1:12 Let us swallow them alive like Sheol [Hell],
Even whole, as those who go down to the pit;

Matthew 5:29 "If your right eye makes you stumble, tear it out and throw it from you; for it is better for you to lose one of the parts of your body, than for your whole body to be thrown into hell.

Matthew 10:28 "Do not fear those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul; but rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

Darkness

1 Samuel 2:9 "He keeps the feet of His godly ones,
But the wicked ones are silenced in darkness;
For not by might shall a man prevail.

Job 10:21-22
21 Before I go—and I shall not return—
To the land of darkness and deep shadow,
22 The land of utter gloom as darkness itself,
Of deep shadow without order,
And which shines as the darkness."

Job 18:18 "He is driven from light into darkness,
And chased from the inhabited world.

Job 33:28 'He has redeemed my soul from going to the pit,
And my life shall see the light.'

Job 33:30 To bring back his soul from the pit,
That he may be enlightened with the light of life.

Psalms 49:19 He shall go to the generation of his fathers;
They will never see the light.

Psalms 88:6 You have put me in the lowest pit,
In dark places, in the depths.

Proverbs 20:20 He who curses his father or his mother,
His lamp will go out in time of darkness.

Nahum 1:8 But with an overflowing flood
He will make a complete end of its site,
And will pursue His enemies into darkness.

Matthew 8:12 **but the sons of the kingdom will be cast out into the outer darkness; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth."**

Matthew 25:30 **"Throw out the worthless slave into the outer darkness; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.**

2 Peter 2:4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to pits of darkness, reserved for judgment;

2 Peter 2:17 These are springs without water and mists driven by a storm, for whom the black darkness has been reserved.

Jude 13 wild waves of the sea, casting up their own shame like foam; wandering stars, for whom the black darkness has been reserved forever.

Revelation 16:10 Then the fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and his kingdom became darkened; and they gnawed their tongues because of pain,

Degrees of punishment

Proverbs 9:18 But he does not know that the dead are there,
That her guests are in the depths of Sheol **[Hell]**.

Zechariah 1:6 "But did not My words and My statutes, which I commanded My servants the prophets, overtake your fathers? Then they repented and said, 'As the Lord of hosts purposed to do to us in accordance with our ways and our deeds, so He has dealt with us.' " " " "

Hebrews 10:28–29 Anyone who has set aside the Law of Moses dies without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses. 29 How much severer punishment do you think he will deserve who has trampled under foot the Son of God, and has regarded as unclean the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and has insulted the Spirit of grace?

Destruction

Job 21:20 "Let his own eyes see his decay,
And let him drink of the wrath of the Almighty.

Job 31:3 "Is it not calamity to the unjust
And disaster to those who work iniquity?

Job 31:23 "For calamity from God is a terror to me,
And because of His majesty I can do nothing.

Psalm 9:17 The wicked will return to Sheol [Hell],
Even all the nations who forget God.

Psalm 16:10 For You will not abandon my soul to Sheol [Hell];
Nor will You allow Your Holy One to undergo decay.

Psalm 32:10 Many are the sorrows of the wicked,
But he who trusts in the Lord, lovingkindness shall surround him.

Psalm 88:11 (NIV) Is your love declared in the grave,
your faithfulness in Destruction?

Psalm 103:4 Who redeems your life from the pit,
Who crowns you with lovingkindness and compassion;

Psalm 139:19 O that You would slay the wicked, O God;
Depart from me, therefore, men of bloodshed.

Proverbs 10:29 The way of the Lord is a stronghold to the upright,
But ruin to the workers of iniquity.

Proverbs 11:21 Assuredly, the evil man will not go unpunished,
But the descendants of the righteous will be delivered.

Proverbs 15:11 (NIV84) Death and Destruction lie open before the Lord—
how much more the hearts of men!

Proverbs 21:15 The exercise of justice is joy for the righteous,
But is terror to the workers of iniquity.

Proverbs 31:8 (KJV) Open thy mouth for the dumb in the cause of all such as are
appointed to destruction.

Isaiah 1:28 (NIV84) But rebels and sinners will both be broken,
and those who forsake the Lord will perish.

Matthew 7:13 "Enter through the narrow gate; for the gate is wide and the way is broad
that leads to destruction, and there are many who enter through it.

Matthew 13:42 and will throw them into the furnace of fire; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 13:50 and will throw them into the furnace of fire; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 23:33 "You serpents, you brood of vipers, how will you escape the sentence of hell?

Matthew 24:51 and will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Matthew 25:30 "Throw out the worthless slave into the outer darkness; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Luke 13:3 "I tell you, no, but unless you repent, you will all likewise perish.

Luke 16:23 "In Hades he lifted up his eyes, being in torment, and *saw Abraham far away and Lazarus in his bosom.

Romans 3:16 Destruction and misery are in their paths,

2 Thessalonians 1:9 These will pay the penalty of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of His power,

2 Peter 2:9 then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from temptation, and to keep the unrighteous under punishment for the day of judgment,

Eternal Separation

Proverbs 15:29 The Lord is far from the wicked,
But He hears the prayer of the righteous.

2 Thessalonians 1:9 These will pay the penalty of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of His power,

Fear

Job 18:14 "He is torn from the security of his tent,
And they march him before the king of terrors.

Job 31:23 "For calamity from God is a terror to me,
And because of His majesty I can do nothing.

Psalms 55:4 My heart is in anguish within me,
And the terrors of death have fallen upon me.

Psalms 73:18-19

18 Surely You set them in slippery places;
You cast them down to destruction.

19 How they are destroyed in a moment!
They are utterly swept away by sudden terrors!

Proverbs 10:24 What the wicked fears will come upon him,
But the desire of the righteous will be granted.

Hebrews 10:31 It is a terrifying thing to fall into the hands of the living God.

Fire/Burning

Deuteronomy 32:22 For a fire is kindled in My anger,
And burns to the lowest part of Sheol [Hell],
And consumes the earth with its yield,
And sets on fire the foundations of the mountains.

Job 18:15 "There dwells in his tent nothing of his;
Brimstone is scattered on his habitation.

Job 31:12 "For it would be fire that consumes to Abaddon [Hell],
And would uproot all my increase.

Psalms 11:6 Upon the wicked He will rain snares;
Fire and brimstone and burning wind will be the portion of their cup.

Psalms 37:20 But the wicked will perish;
And the enemies of the Lord will be like the glory of the pastures,
They vanish—like smoke they vanish away.

Psalms 140:10 "May burning coals fall upon them;
May they be cast into the fire,
Into deep pits from which they cannot rise.

Isaiah 66:24 "Then they will go forth and look
On the corpses of the men
Who have transgressed against Me.
For their worm will not die
And their fire will not be quenched;
And they will be an abhorrence to all mankind."

Matthew 5:22 "But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother shall be guilty before the court; and whoever says to his brother, 'You good-for-nothing,' shall be guilty before the supreme court; and whoever says, 'You fool,' shall be guilty enough to go into the fiery hell.

Matthew 13:30 'Allow both to grow together until the harvest; and in the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, "First gather up the tares and bind them in bundles to burn them up; but gather the wheat into my barn." ' ' "

Matthew 18:8–9 “If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it from you; it is better for you to enter life crippled or lame, than to have two hands or two feet and be cast into the eternal fire. 9 “If your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it from you. It is better for you to enter life with one eye, than to have two eyes and be cast into the fiery hell.

Matthew 25:41 “Then He will also say to those on His left, ‘Depart from Me, accursed ones, into the eternal fire which has been prepared for the devil and his angels;

Mark 9:43–48 “If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off; it is better for you to enter life crippled, than, having your two hands, to go into hell, into the unquenchable fire, 44 [where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.] 45 “If your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off; it is better for you to enter life lame, than, having your two feet, to be cast into hell, 46 [where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.] 47 “If your eye causes you to stumble, throw it out; it is better for you to enter the kingdom of God with one eye, than, having two eyes, to be cast into hell, 48 where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.

Luke 3:9 “Indeed the axe is already laid at the root of the trees; so every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.”

Luke 3:17 “His winnowing fork is in His hand to thoroughly clear His threshing floor, and to gather the wheat into His barn; but He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.”

James 3:6 And the tongue is a fire, the very world of iniquity; the tongue is set among our members as that which defiles the entire body, and sets on fire the course of our life, and is set on fire by hell.

Revelation 9:2 He opened the bottomless pit, and smoke went up out of the pit, like the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by the smoke of the pit.

Revelation 20:10 And the devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are also; and they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

Hell

Psalm 55:15 Let death come deceitfully upon them;
Let them go down alive to Sheol [Hell],
For evil is in their dwelling, in their midst.

Psalm 88:3 For my soul has had enough troubles,
And my life has drawn near to Sheol [Hell].

Psalm 139:8 If I ascend to heaven, You are there;
If I make my bed in Sheol [Hell], behold, You are there.

Proverbs 5:5 Her feet go down to death,
Her steps take hold of Sheol [Hell].

Proverbs 9:18 But he does not know that the dead are there,
That her guests are in the depths of Sheol [Hell].

Proverbs 27:20 Sheol [Hell] and Abaddon [Hell] are never satisfied,
Nor are the eyes of man ever satisfied.

Isaiah 5:14 Therefore Sheol [Hell] has enlarged its throat and opened its mouth without
measure; And Jerusalem's splendor, her multitude, her din of revelry and the jubilant
within her, descend into it.

Habakkuk 2:5

"Furthermore, wine betrays the haughty man,
So that he does not stay at home.
He enlarges his appetite like Sheol [Hell],
And he is like death, never satisfied.
He also gathers to himself all nations
And collects to himself all peoples.

Matthew 16:18 "I also say to you that you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build My
church; and the gates of Hades [Hell] will not overpower it.

Matthew 23:33 "You serpents, you brood of vipers, how will you escape the sentence of
hell?

Luke 12:5 "But I will warn you whom to fear: fear the One who, after He has killed, has
authority to cast into hell; yes, I tell you, fear Him!

2 Peter 2:4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and
committed them to pits of darkness, reserved for judgment;

Revelation 20:14 Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the
second death, the lake of fire.

Hell desolate (No life of any kind)

Isaiah 59:10 We grope along the wall like blind men,
We grope like those who have no eyes;
We stumble at midday as in the twilight,
Among those who are vigorous we are like dead men.

Ezekiel 26:20 then I will bring you down with those who go down to the pit, to the people
of old, and I will make you dwell in the lower parts of the earth, like the ancient waste
places, with those who go down to the pit, so that you will not be inhabited; but I will set
glory in the land of the living.

Humiliation/Shame (Endured in hell)

Isaiah 5:14–15

14 Therefore Sheol [Hell] has enlarged its throat and opened its mouth without measure; And Jerusalem's splendor, her multitude, her din of revelry and the jubilant within her, descend into it.

15 So the common man will be humbled and the man of importance abased, The eyes of the proud also will be abased.

Isaiah 57:9

"You have journeyed to the king with oil
And increased your perfumes;
You have sent your envoys a great distance
And made them go down to Sheol [Hell].

Ezekiel 32:24

"Elam is there and all her hordes around her grave; all of them slain, fallen by the sword, who went down uncircumcised to the lower parts of the earth, who instilled their terror in the land of the living and bore their disgrace with those who went down to the pit.

Revelation 16:15 ("Behold, I am coming like a thief. Blessed is the one who stays awake and keeps his clothes, so that he will not walk about naked and men will not see his shame.")

Life Short

Psalm 39:5

"Behold, You have made my days as handbreadths,
And my lifetime as nothing in Your sight;
Surely every man at his best is a mere breath. Selah.

Psalm 102:3

For my days have been consumed in smoke,
And my bones have been scorched like a hearth.

Psalm 103:15–16

15 As for man, his days are like grass;
As a flower of the field, so he flourishes.
16 When the wind has passed over it, it is no more,
And its place acknowledges it no longer.

James 4:14 Yet you do not know what your life will be like tomorrow. You are just a vapor that appears for a little while and then vanishes away.

Location

Deuteronomy 32:22

For a fire is kindled in My anger,
And burns to the lowest part of Sheol [Hell],
And consumes the earth with its yield,
And sets on fire the foundations of the mountains.

Job 11:8

"They are high as the heavens, what can you do?
Deeper than Sheol [Hell], what can you know?"

Job 33:24

Then let him be gracious to him, and say,
'Deliver him from going down to the pit,
I have found a ransom';

Job 33:28

'He has redeemed my soul from going to the pit,
And my life shall see the light.'

Psalms 9:15

The nations have sunk down in the pit which they have made;
In the net which they hid, their own foot has been caught.

Psalms 28:1

To You, O Lord, I call;
My rock, do not be deaf to me,
For if You are silent to me,
I will become like those who go down to the pit.

Psalms 30:3

O Lord, You have brought up my soul from Sheol [Hell];
You have kept me alive, that I would not go down to the pit.

Psalms 30:9

"What profit is there in my blood, if I go down to the pit?
Will the dust praise You? Will it declare Your faithfulness?"

Psalms 40:2

He brought me up out of the pit of destruction, out of the miry clay,
And He set my feet upon a rock making my footsteps firm.

Psalms 49:17

For when he dies he will carry nothing away;
His glory will not descend after him.

Psalms 55:15

Let death come deceitfully upon them;
Let them go down alive to Sheol [Hell],
For evil is in their dwelling, in their midst.

Psalms 55:23

But You, O God, will bring them down to the pit of destruction;
Men of bloodshed and deceit will not live out half their days.
But I will trust in You.

Psalm 73:18
Surely You set them in slippery places;
You cast them down to destruction.

Psalm 88:6
You have put me in the lowest pit,
In dark places, in the depths.

Psalm 139:15
My frame was not hidden from You,
When I was made in secret,
And skillfully wrought in the depths of the earth;

Psalm 143:7
Answer me quickly, O Lord, my spirit fails;
Do not hide Your face from me,
Or I will become like those who go down to the pit.

Proverbs 7:27
Her house is the way to Sheol [Hell],
Descending to the chambers of death.

Proverbs 9:18
But he does not know that the dead are there,
That her guests are in the depths of Sheol [Hell].

Isaiah 14:9
"Sheol [Hell] from beneath is excited over you to meet you when you come;
It arouses for you the spirits of the dead, all the leaders of the earth;
It raises all the kings of the nations from their thrones.

Isaiah 14:19
"But you have been cast out of your tomb
Like a rejected branch,
Clothed with the slain who are pierced with a sword,
Who go down to the stones of the pit
Like a trampled corpse.

Isaiah 38:18
"For Sheol [Hell] cannot thank You,
Death cannot praise You;
Those who go down to the pit cannot hope for Your faithfulness.

Isaiah 57:9
"You have journeyed to the king with oil
And increased your perfumes;
You have sent your envoys a great distance
And made them go down to Sheol [Hell].

Lamentations 3:55

I called on Your name, O Lord,
Out of the lowest pit.

Ezekiel 26:20

then I will bring you down with those who go down to the pit, to the people of old, and I will make you dwell in the lower parts of the earth, like the ancient waste places, with those who go down to the pit, so that you will not be inhabited; but I will set glory in the land of the living.

Ezekiel 28:8

'They will bring you down to the pit,
And you will die the death of those who are slain
In the heart of the seas.

Ezekiel 31:14

so that all the trees by the waters may not be exalted in their stature, nor set their top among the clouds, nor their well-watered mighty ones stand erect in their height. For they have all been given over to death, to the earth beneath, among the sons of men, with those who go down to the pit."

Ezekiel 31:16-18

16 "I made the nations quake at the sound of its fall when I made it go down to Sheol [Hell] with those who go down to the pit; and all the well-watered trees of Eden, the choicest and best of Lebanon, were comforted in the earth beneath.

17 "They also went down with it to Sheol [Hell] to those who were slain by the sword; and those who were its strength lived under its shade among the nations.

18 "To which among the trees of Eden are you thus equal in glory and greatness? Yet you will be brought down with the trees of Eden to the earth beneath; you will lie in the midst of the uncircumcised, with those who were slain by the sword. So is Pharaoh and all his hordes!" ' declares the Lord God."

Ezekiel 32:18-30

18 "Son of man, wail for the hordes of Egypt and bring it down, her and the daughters of the powerful nations, to the nether world, with those who go down to the pit;

19 'Whom do you surpass in beauty?

Go down and make your bed with the uncircumcised.'

20 "They shall fall in the midst of those who are slain by the sword. She is given over to the sword; they have drawn her and all her hordes away.

21 "The strong among the mighty ones shall speak of him and his helpers from the midst of Sheol [Hell], 'They have gone down, they lie still, the uncircumcised, slain by the sword.'

22 "Assyria is there and all her company; her graves are round about her. All of them are slain, fallen by the sword,

23 whose graves are set in the remotest parts of the pit and her company is round about her grave. All of them are slain, fallen by the sword, who spread terror in the land of the living.

24 "Elam is there and all her hordes around her grave; all of them slain, fallen by the sword, who went down uncircumcised to the lower parts of the earth, who instilled their terror in the land of the living and bore their disgrace with those who went down to the pit.

25 "They have made a bed for her among the slain with all her hordes. Her graves are around it, they are all uncircumcised, slain by the sword (although their terror was instilled in the land of the living), and they bore their disgrace with those who go down to the pit; they were put in the midst of the slain.

26 "Meshech, Tubal and all their hordes are there; their graves surround them. All of them were slain by the sword uncircumcised, though they instilled their terror in the land of the living.

27 "Nor do they lie beside the fallen heroes of the uncircumcised, who went down to Sheol [Hell] with their weapons of war and whose swords were laid under their heads; but the punishment for their iniquity rested on their bones, though the terror of these heroes was once in the land of the living.

28 "But in the midst of the uncircumcised you will be broken and lie with those slain by the sword.

29 "There also is Edom, its kings and all its princes, who for all their might are laid with those slain by the sword; they will lie with the uncircumcised and with those who go down to the pit.

30 "There also are the chiefs of the north, all of them, and all the Sidonians, who in spite of the terror resulting from their might, in shame went down with the slain. So they lay down uncircumcised with those slain by the sword and bore their disgrace with those who go down to the pit.

Amos 9:2

"Though they dig into Sheol [Hell],
From there will My hand take them;
And though they ascend to heaven,
From there will I bring them down.

Matthew 11:23 "And you, Capernaum, will not be exalted to heaven, will you? You will descend to Hades; for if the miracles had occurred in Sodom which occurred in you, it would have remained to this day.

Matthew 12:40 for just as Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the sea monster, so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

2 Peter 2:4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to pits of darkness, reserved for judgment;

Revelation 9:1-2 Then the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star from heaven which had fallen to the earth; and the key of the bottomless pit was given to him. 2 He opened the bottomless pit, and smoke went up out of the pit, like the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by the smoke of the pit.

Revelation 20:1-3 Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven, holding the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. 2 And he laid hold of the dragon, the serpent of old, who is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years; 3 and he threw him into the abyss, and shut it and sealed it over him, so that he would not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were completed; after these things he must be released for a short time.

Revelation 17:8 "The beast that you saw was, and is not, and is about to come up out of the abyss and go to destruction. And those who dwell on the earth, whose name has not been written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, will wonder when they see the beast, that he was and is not and will come.

No hope

Job 8:13

13 "So are the paths of all who forget God;
And the hope of the godless will perish,

Proverbs 11:7

7 When a wicked man dies, his expectation will perish,
And the hope of strong men perishes.

Ecclesiastes 9:4 For whoever is joined with all the living, there is hope; surely a live dog is better than a dead lion.

Isaiah 38:18

18 "For Sheol [Hell] cannot thank You,
Death cannot praise You;
Those who go down to the pit cannot hope for Your faithfulness.

Lamentations 3:18

18 So I say, "My strength has perished,
And so has my hope from the Lord."

Ephesians 2:12 remember that you were at that time separate from Christ, excluded from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of promise, having no hope and without God in the world.

1 Thessalonians 4:13 But we do not want you to be uninformed, brethren, about those who are asleep, so that you will not grieve as do the rest who have no hope.

No Mercy

Psalms 36:5

5 Your lovingkindness, O Lord, extends to the heavens,
Your faithfulness reaches to the skies.

Psalms 62:12

12 And lovingkindness is Yours, O Lord,
For You recompense a man according to his work.

Psalms 103:4

4 Who redeems your life from the pit,
Who crowns you with lovingkindness and compassion;

Psalms 103:17

17 But the lovingkindness of the Lord is from everlasting to everlasting on those who fear Him,
And His righteousness to children's children,

No peace

Isaiah 57:21 "There is no peace," says my God, "for the wicked."

Ezekiel 7:25 'When anguish comes, they will seek peace, but there will be none.

No purpose

Psalm 6:5

5 For there is no mention of You in death;
In Sheol [Hell] who will give You thanks?

Psalm 88:5

5 Forsaken among the dead,
Like the slain who lie in the grave,
Whom You remember no more,
And they are cut off from Your hand.

Psalm 88:12

12 Will Your wonders be made known in the darkness?
And Your righteousness in the land of forgetfulness?

Proverbs 10:28

28 The hope of the righteous is gladness,
But the expectation of the wicked perishes.

Ecclesiastes 6:4

4 for it comes in futility and goes into obscurity; and its name is covered in obscurity.

Ecclesiastes 9:10

10 Whatever your hand finds to do, do it with all your might; for there is no activity or planning or knowledge or wisdom in Sheol [Hell] where you are going.

No rest (from torment or physical rest or sleep)

Isaiah 57:20

20 But the wicked are like the tossing sea,
For it cannot be quiet,
And its waters toss up refuse and mud.

Revelation 14:11 "And the smoke of their torment goes up forever and ever; they have no rest day and night, those who worship the beast and his image, and whoever receives the mark of his name."

Odors/Stench

Mark 9:25 When Jesus saw that a crowd was rapidly gathering, He rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, "You deaf and mute spirit, I command you, come out of him and do not enter him again."

Revelation 18:2 And he cried out with a mighty voice, saying, "Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great! She has become a dwelling place of demons and a prison of every unclean spirit, and a prison of every unclean and hateful bird.

Pit

Job 33:24

24 Then let him be gracious to him, and say,
'Deliver him from going down to the pit,
I have found a ransom';

Job 33:28

28 'He has redeemed my soul from going to the pit,
And my life shall see the light.'

Job 33:18

18 He keeps back his soul from the pit,
And his life from passing over into Sheol [Hell].

Job 33:30

30 To bring back his soul from the pit,
That he may be enlightened with the light of life.

Psalms 30:3

3 O Lord, You have brought up my soul from Sheol [Hell];
You have kept me alive, that I would not go down to the pit.

Psalms 30:9

9 "What profit is there in my blood, if I go down to the pit?
Will the dust praise You? Will it declare Your faithfulness?

Psalms 40:2

2 He brought me up out of the pit of destruction, out of the miry clay,
And He set my feet upon a rock making my footsteps firm.

Psalms 55:23

23 But You, O God, will bring them down to the pit of destruction;
Men of bloodshed and deceit will not live out half their days.
But I will trust in You.

Psalms 143:7

7 Answer me quickly, O Lord, my spirit fails;
Do not hide Your face from me,
Or I will become like those who go down to the pit.

Isaiah 38:17

17 "Lo, for my own welfare I had great bitterness;
It is You who has kept my soul from the pit of nothingness,
For You have cast all my sins behind Your back.

Isaiah 38:18

18 "For Sheol [Hell] cannot thank You,
Death cannot praise You;
Those who go down to the pit cannot hope for Your faithfulness.

Ezekiel 32:23

23 whose graves are set in the remotest parts of the pit and her company is round about her grave. All of them are slain, fallen by the sword, who spread terror in the land of the living.

Ezekiel 32:25

25 "They have made a bed for her among the slain with all her hordes. Her graves are around it, they are all uncircumcised, slain by the sword (although their terror was instilled in the land of the living), and they bore their disgrace with those who go down to the pit; they were put in the midst of the slain.

Ezekiel 32:29

29 "There also is Edom, its kings and all its princes, who for all their might are laid with those slain by the sword; they will lie with the uncircumcised and with those who go down to the pit.

Ezekiel 32:30

30 "There also are the chiefs of the north, all of them, and all the Sidonians, who in spite of the terror resulting from their might, in shame went down with the slain. So they lay down uncircumcised with those slain by the sword and bore their disgrace with those who go down to the pit.

Revelation 9:1 Then the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star from heaven which had fallen to the earth; and the key of the bottomless pit was given to him.

Revelation 9:2 He opened the bottomless pit, and smoke went up out of the pit, like the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by the smoke of the pit.

Revelation 11:7 When they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up out of the abyss will make war with them, and overcome them and kill them.

Revelation 17:8 "The beast that you saw was, and is not, and is about to come up out of the abyss and go to destruction. And those who dwell on the earth, whose name has not been written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, will wonder when they see the beast, that he was and is not and will come.

Revelation 20:3 and he threw him into the abyss, and shut it and sealed it over him, so that he would not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were completed; after these things he must be released for a short time.

Prison

Proverbs 7:27

27 Her house is the way to Sheol [Hell],
Descending to the chambers of death.

Isaiah 24:22

22 They will be gathered together
Like prisoners in the dungeon,
And will be confined in prison;
And after many days they will be punished.

Profanity

Ezekiel 22:26

26 "Her priests have done violence to My law and have profaned My holy things; they have made no distinction between the holy and the profane, and they have not taught the difference between the unclean and the clean; and they hide their eyes from My sabbaths, and I am profaned among them.

Ezekiel 28:14-16

14 "You were the anointed cherub who covers,
And I placed you there.

You were on the holy mountain of God;
You walked in the midst of the stones of fire.

15 "You were blameless in your ways
From the day you were created
Until unrighteousness was found in you.

16 "By the abundance of your trade
You were internally filled with violence,
And you sinned;
Therefore I have cast you as profane
From the mountain of God.
And I have destroyed you, O covering cherub,
From the midst of the stones of fire.

Righteous Judge

Deuteronomy 16:18 "You shall appoint for yourself judges and officers in all your towns which the Lord your God is giving you, according to your tribes, and they shall judge the people with righteous judgment.

Deuteronomy 16:20 "Justice, and only justice, you shall pursue, that you may live and possess the land which the Lord your God is giving you.

Deuteronomy 32:4

4 "The Rock! His work is perfect,
For all His ways are just;
A God of faithfulness and without injustice,
Righteous and upright is He.

Psalm 7:9

9 O let the evil of the wicked come to an end, but establish the righteous;
For the righteous God tries the hearts and minds.

Psalm 96:10

10 Say among the nations, "The Lord reigns;
Indeed, the world is firmly established, it will not be moved;
He will judge the peoples with equity."

Psalm 96:13

13 Before the Lord, for He is coming,
For He is coming to judge the earth.
He will judge the world in righteousness
And the peoples in His faithfulness.

Proverbs 11:1

1 A false balance is an abomination to the Lord,
But a just weight is His delight.

Proverbs 17:26

26 It is also not good to fine the righteous,
Nor to strike the noble for their uprightness.

Ecclesiastes 3:17 I said to myself, "God will judge both the righteous man and the wicked man," for a time for every matter and for every deed is there.

Isaiah 45:21

21 "Declare and set forth your case;
Indeed, let them consult together.
Who has announced this from of old?
Who has long since declared it?
Is it not I, the Lord?
And there is no other God besides Me,
A righteous God and a Savior;
There is none except Me.

Zechariah 8:16 'These are the things which you should do: speak the truth to one another; judge with truth and judgment for peace in your gates.

Acts 17:31 because He has fixed a day in which He will judge the world in righteousness through a Man whom He has appointed, having furnished proof to all men by raising Him from the dead."

Thirst

Zechariah 9:11

11 As for you also, because of the blood of My covenant with you,
I have set your prisoners free from the waterless pit.

Torment in Hell

Psalm 74:20

20 Consider the covenant;
For the dark places of the land are full of the habitations of violence.

Psalm 116:3

3 The cords of death encompassed me
And the terrors of Sheol [Hell] came upon me;
I found distress and sorrow.

Amos 5:18–19

18 Alas, you who are longing for the day of the Lord,
For what purpose will the day of the Lord be to you?
It will be darkness and not light;
19 As when a man flees from a lion
And a bear meets him,
Or goes home, leans his hand against the wall
And a snake bites him.

Matthew 24:51 and will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites; in that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

Luke 12:47–48 “And that slave who knew his master’s will and did not get ready or act in accord with his will, will receive many lashes, 48 but the one who did not know it, and committed deeds worthy of a flogging, will receive but few. From everyone who has been given much, much will be required; and to whom they entrusted much, of him they will ask all the more.

Worms

Job 21:26

26 “Together they lie down in the dust,
And worms cover them.

Job 24:20

20 “A mother will forget him;
The worm feeds sweetly till he is no longer remembered.
And wickedness will be broken like a tree.

Isaiah 14:11

11 ‘Your pomp and the music of your harps
Have been brought down to Sheol [Hell];
Maggots are spread out as your bed beneath you
And worms are your covering.’

Isaiah 66:24

24 “Then they will go forth and look
On the corpses of the men
Who have transgressed against Me.
For their worm will not die
And their fire will not be quenched;
And they will be an abhorrence to all mankind.”

Mark 9:44 where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.

Mark 9:46 where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.

Mark 9:48 where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.

Wrath

Exodus 15:7

7 "And in the greatness of Your excellence You overthrow those who rise up against You;
You send forth Your burning anger, and it consumes them as chaff.

Job 21:30

30 "For the wicked is reserved for the day of calamity;
They will be led forth at the day of fury.

Job 31:23

23 "For calamity from God is a terror to me,
And because of His majesty I can do nothing.

Psalms 73:27

27 For, behold, those who are far from You will perish;
You have destroyed all those who are unfaithful to You.

Psalms 90:7-11

7 For we have been consumed by Your anger
And by Your wrath we have been dismayed.

8 You have placed our iniquities before You,
Our secret sins in the light of Your presence.

9 For all our days have declined in Your fury;
We have finished our years like a sigh.

10 As for the days of our life, they contain seventy years,
Or if due to strength, eighty years,
Yet their pride is but labor and sorrow;
For soon it is gone and we fly away.

11 Who understands the power of Your anger
And Your fury, according to the fear that is due You?

Proverbs 11:23

23 The desire of the righteous is only good,
But the expectation of the wicked is wrath.

Isaiah 66:15

15 For behold, the Lord will come in fire
And His chariots like the whirlwind,
To render His anger with fury,
And His rebuke with flames of fire.

Jeremiah 4:4

4 "Circumcise yourselves to the Lord
And remove the foreskins of your heart,
Men of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem,
Or else My wrath will go forth like fire
And burn with none to quench it,
Because of the evil of your deeds."

Jeremiah 25:37

37 "And the peaceful folds are made silent
Because of the fierce anger of the Lord.

Lamentations 4:11

11 The Lord has accomplished His wrath,
He has poured out His fierce anger;
And He has kindled a fire in Zion
Which has consumed its foundations.

John 3:36 "He who believes in the Son has eternal life; but he who does not obey the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God abides on him."

Romans 1:18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men who suppress the truth in unrighteousness,

Romans 5:9 Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath of God through Him.

1 Thessalonians 1:10 and to wait for His Son from heaven, whom He raised from the dead, that is Jesus, who rescues us from the wrath to come.

2 Thessalonians 1:8-9 dealing out retribution to those who do not know God and to those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. 9 These will pay the penalty of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of His power,

Hebrews 10:31 It is a terrifying thing to fall into the hands of the living God.

2 Peter 2:9 then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from temptation, and to keep the unrighteous under punishment for the day of judgment,

Chapter 43: What Happens When You Die?

Anyone who is not a true born-again Christian goes to hell when they die physically. They will have a body and will experience extreme pain and suffering as punishment for rejecting the salvation provided for them in Jesus Christ.

Please see the chapter titled *Hell Is Real* for a list of many Bible verses concerning hell.

Anyone who does not believe hell exists most likely also:

- does not believe what the Bible teaches on other topics.
- is not a true born-again believer.
- has a misconception of what God is really like.

A **common misconception** such people say is: “God is love and therefore He won’t send anyone to hell” The problem with that thinking is that while it is true that God is love, they do not understand that is not all that God is; one of His other attributes is justice, infinite justice, in fact. God will judge the sin and unfaithfulness of mankind. Non-Christians go to a real hell when they die and, after the great white throne judgment, they will be cast into the Lake of Fire for all eternity; there will be no escape, ever.

Revelation 20:11–15 Then I saw a great white throne and Him who sat upon it, from whose presence earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. 12 And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life; and the dead were judged from the things which were written in the books, according to their deeds. 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead which were in them; and they were judged, every one of them according to their deeds. 14 Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire. 15 And if anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

When a born-again Christian dies physically, they immediately go to be with the Lord Jesus Christ. And then in the end, when the body is resurrected, they are given a glorified human body like the body Jesus Christ has now.

Chapter 44: What You Need To Know On Your Deathbed

The most important thing to know on your death-bed, and preferably long before you are on your deathbed, is whether or not you will go to heaven when you die. You go to either heaven or hell. Sorry to anyone who thinks truth is relative because it is not relative; you will discover that when you die, and it will be too late. This document is designed to help you accept Jesus Christ as your personal Lord and Savior; if you do then He will save you from an eternity in the Lake of Fire.

Chapter 45: Find Out Now If You Will Go To Heaven Or Hell

This book will help you determine if you will go to heaven or hell when you die. One simple question will tell you where you will go when you die: Are you trying to make yourself acceptable to God by your own good works or are you depending entirely on the finished work of Jesus Christ to make you acceptable to God? If you are trying to make yourself acceptable to God by your own good works, then when you die, you will go to hell. If you are depending entirely on the finished work of Jesus Christ to make you acceptable to God, then when you die, you will go to heaven.

Please read or re-read the chapter titled *Essential Christian Doctrines*. If you answer no to one or more of those essential Christian doctrines then you are not born-again; you will not go to heaven when you die, instead, you will go to hell.

Chapter 46: Should A Christian Ask For Forgiveness?

A non-Christian must ask for forgiveness

A non-Christian in the process of becoming a Christian must ask for forgiveness. The non-Christian is spiritually dead in their sins. They must ask God to forgive them and then accept Jesus Christ as their Savior. They must accept that Jesus Christ paid the penalty for their sins. They must believe that it is only by Christ's death that they are forgiven, and it is not because of any of their good works. If a non-Christian does not admit they are a sinner needing forgiveness, then how can Jesus Christ be their Savior? -- He cannot. The sinner must ask for forgiveness.

The remainder of this chapter addresses a person who is already a born-again Christian. They have already passed from spiritual death to spiritual life by asking for forgiveness and accepting Jesus as their personal Lord and Savior. In a nutshell, Jesus' death on the cross paid for a Christian's sins: past, present, and future sins.

Why Would a Christian Ask for Forgiveness Over And Over?

Do you ask for redemption over and over? Do you ask for redemption every day? Why not? You do not ask for redemption every day because when Christ redeemed you it was done once and for all. Is that true or not? It is true. You are correct not to ask to be redeemed everyday so, why would you ask for forgiveness every day?

Colossians 1:13–14 For He rescued us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son, 14 in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

Have you ever been told to ask for redemption repeatedly? No, probably not. You would probably think it would be a non-biblical thing to do and you would be right. Why then would you think you should ask for forgiveness over and over? Redemption is the forgiveness of sins. As a born-again believer, asking for redemption over and over is wrong; since redemption is the forgiveness of sins then asking for forgiveness over and over again is also wrong.

Forgiveness And Some Implications

Implications of asking God over and over again to forgive your sins after you are already a Christian.

1. When Christ died on the cross how many of your sins were in the future? Answer: All of them.
2. Christ would have to leave you if there were unforgiven sin in you. Can you lose your salvation? Why did God withdraw his spirit from Adam and Eve? He withdrew His Spirit from within man because of the sin within man, the sin which had not yet been dealt with.

Hebrews 13:5 *Make sure that your character is free from the love of money, being content with what you have; for He Himself has said, "I WILL NEVER DESERT YOU, NOR WILL I EVER FORSAKE YOU,"*

3. What would happen to you if you died before you asked for forgiveness? Lost?
4. What is the only acceptable sacrifice to God which can take away your sin and which provides forgiveness? Is Christ going to die on the cross again? No, if we do that, we put Him to open shame.

Romans 6:9–10 knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead, is never to die again; death no longer is master over Him. 10 For the death that He died, He died to sin once for all; but the life that He lives, He lives to God.

Hebrews 9:22 And according to the Law, *one may almost say*, all things are cleansed with blood, and without shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.

Hebrews 6:6 and *then* have fallen away, it is impossible to renew them again to repentance, since they again crucify to themselves the Son of God and put Him to open shame.

5. When you say you need to ask for forgiveness you say there is unforgiven sin, but God says once you have accepted Christ's payment for your sins, all your sins are forgiven.

Colossians 2:13 When you were dead in your transgressions and the uncircumcision of your flesh, He made you alive together with Him, having forgiven us all our transgressions,

Romans 8:1 Therefore there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus.

Chapter 47: What About 1 John 1:9?

1 John 1:9 If we confess our sins, He is faithful and righteous to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

Notice that 1 John 1:9 addresses a problem mentioned in 1 John 1:8 which says:

1 John 1:8 If we say that we have no sin, we are deceiving ourselves and the truth is not in us.

If the truth is not in a person, then the person is a non-Christian; the truth is not in them therefore Christ is not in them. 1 John 1:9 gives that type of person what they need. If you are the lost person in 1 John 1:8, then you need what is talked about in 1 John 1:9 i.e., you need to be purified from all unrighteousness. But if you are not the lost person in 1 John 1:8, why would you try to apply 1 John 1:9 to yourself?

Impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.

Hebrews 10:1–4 For the Law, since it has *only* a shadow of the good things to come and not the very form of things, can never, by the same sacrifices which they offer continually year by year, make perfect those who draw near. 2 Otherwise, would they not have ceased to be offered, because the worshipers, having once been cleansed, would no longer have had consciousness of sins? 3 But in those *sacrifices* there is a reminder of sins year by year. 4 For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.

Christ's sacrifice does not have to be repeated over and over; once it was done, He sat down:

Hebrews 1:3 And He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature, and upholds all things by the word of His power. When He had made purification of sins, He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high,

The word "propitiation" means satisfaction. God was totally satisfied with what Christ did on the cross to pay for our sins and for the sins of the whole world. Therefore, ALL sin was dealt with at the cross as mentioned in 1 John 2:2

1 John 2:2 and He Himself is the propitiation for our sins; and not for ours only, but also for *those of* the whole world.

Hebrews 9:12 and not through the blood of goats and calves, but through His own blood, He entered the holy place once for all, having obtained eternal redemption.

Colossians 1:13–14 For He rescued us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son, 14 in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Hebrews 9:25–28 nor was it that He would offer Himself often, as the high priest enters the holy place year by year with blood that is not his own. 26 Otherwise, He would have needed to suffer often since the foundation of the world; but now once at the consummation of the ages He has been manifested to put away sin by the sacrifice of Himself. 27 And inasmuch as it is appointed for men to die once and after this *comes* judgment, 28 so Christ also, having been offered once to bear the sins of many, will appear a second time for salvation without *reference to sin*, to those who eagerly await Him.

John 19:30 Therefore when Jesus had received the sour wine, He said, **"It is finished!"** And He bowed His head and gave up His spirit.

Colossians 2:13 When you were dead in your transgressions and the uncircumcision of your flesh, He made you alive together with Him, **having forgiven us all our transgressions,**

To learn more please listen to the MP3 audio clip at:

- <http://bobgeorge.net/christs-finished-work-on-the-cross/>

Chapter 48: The Lord's Prayer

The way I understand the Lord's prayer and the issue of forgiveness is as follows. Jesus had not yet died on the cross and He was doing exactly what He should do at that point i.e., teach the Law. He knew the purpose of the Law is to lead people to Himself. By saying we would be forgiven only as we forgive others is an impossible standard to meet; just as with the Law, we are unable to meet the standard. Therefore, we are driven to a Savior.

When I sin as a Christian, I confess my sins and thank the Lord Jesus for having already paid the price for my sins and that I have already had all my sins forgiven: past, present, and future sins.

Do you ask for redemption over and over? Do you ask for redemption every day? Why not? You do not ask for redemption every day because when Christ redeemed you it was done once and for all. Is that true or not? It is true. You are correct not to ask to be redeemed everyday so, why would you ask for forgiveness every day?

Colossians 1:13–14 For He rescued us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son, in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

Instead of the Lord's prayer directive under the Law, under grace God tells us to forgive others just as the Lord forgave us.

Colossians 3:13 bearing with one another, and forgiving each other, whoever has a complaint against anyone; just as the Lord forgave you, so also should you.

Please re-read the chapter titled: *Rest from Your Works*

Chapter 49: A Few Thoughts Regarding Faith In God

Blaise Pascal (1623–1662) was a seventeenth-century French mathematician, philosopher, physicist and theologian. He proposed that people place a wager with their lives and souls as to whether or not God exists; It is known as Pascal's wager.

Pascal's wager		
Your Position	If God exists then:	If God does not exist then:
I have faith in God	Go To Heaven	Nothing
I do not have faith in God	Go To Hell	Nothing

If you have faith in God, and God exists, then you gain everything and go to heaven. If you do not have faith in God, and God exists, then you lose everything and go to hell.

You can read more about Pascal's wager at Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia, on the following page: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pascal's_wager

Believing **that** God exists is not equivalent to believing **in** God.

Believing that God exists but that he has mismanaged the world is not equivalent to believing in God.

Believing in God means you have faith in God, and you accept Jesus Christ's sacrifice on the cross for your sins. Faith in God means you believe he knows what he is doing, even in the face of evil, pain, and suffering. If you believe there is a God but that he has mismanaged the universe, then that is equivalent to not having faith in God.

A child receiving a vaccination could look up to his father and wonder why his father is allowing, even requiring him, to submit to a painful needle. The child does not understand the greater good that will come about because of the vaccination. At that moment the child is sure beyond all doubt that his father does not care for him, how could he if he makes him experience the pain? The child is sure that his father has mismanaged things.

Is There a Complaint Department?

If there is a God and you did not have faith in him, and you plan to go to a complaint department to list all your complaints regarding your perception that he mismanaged the world then be aware that you have made a heroic assumption. The assumption is that God will be interested in hearing your complaints; he may not be interested in hearing your complaints.

This does not mean that there will be no opportunity to voice your complaints; it just puts forward the possibility that God may not be interested in listening or responding to them. Hell will be full of people with complaints about how God has done things.

Chapter 50: What Does It Mean To Pray In The Name of Jesus?

Many people think if you don't say "in the name of Jesus" at the end of a prayer then the prayer is not valid. Ending a prayer with the phrase "In the name of Jesus. Amen," is never done in the New Testament. Jesus Christ directed his followers to pray "in His name".

John 14:13-14 "Whatever you ask **in My name**, that will I do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. **14** "If you ask Me anything **in My name**, I will do it.

But what does "**in My name**" mean? "The name of..." is a biblical idiom (a way of speaking); "The name of..." was a way of saying what the person stands for, or their authority. Today we might say I am doing something by the authority of some power. For example, often during a marriage ceremony you hear the phrase "By the power vested in me by the state of..."; it means the state has assigned the legal ability to marry two individuals to the person performing the ceremony.

When we pray in the name of Jesus it simply means we are acting in His authority, and we are consistent with His will. You do not need to say the words "In the name of Jesus. Amen," for a prayer to be heard by God or for the prayer to be effective. It is fine if you say the phrase, but it is not required.

Chapter 51: Essential Christian Doctrines

Each question can be answered with a Yes or No; a true born-again Christian would answer yes to all these questions.

1. Do you believe Jesus of Nazareth is the Christ?
2. Do you believe that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh? In other words, do you believe in the incarnation of Jesus Christ? Meaning: Jesus Christ is fully God and fully man; He exists as the unity in one person of both a divine and human nature.
3. Do you believe Jesus Christ was conceived of the Holy Spirit and born of a virgin?
4. Do you believe Jesus Christ lived a sinless life?
5. Do you believe Jesus Christ performed miracles?
6. Do you believe in Jesus Christ's vicarious and atoning death as payment for your sins?
7. Do you believe in Jesus Christ's ascension to the right hand of the Father?
8. Do you believe Jesus Christ will personally return in power and glory and judge the world?
9. Do you believe in original sin? Meaning: Adam and Eve's unfaithfulness brought death to everyone and tainted every aspect of our being.
10. Do you believe the Bible is the Word of God? Meaning: The 39 books of the Old Testament along with the 27 books of the New Testament are divine and not merely human in origin and they comprise the entire Christian canon (standard of measurement).
11. Do you believe in the Trinity?
Meaning:
 - There is only one God
 - The Father is God, the Son is God, and the Holy Spirit is God
 - The Father, Son, and Holy Spirit are eternally distinct persons
 - When Trinitarians talk about one God, they mean the essence or nature of God. And persons mean the personal self-distinctions within the Godhead. In other words, Trinitarians believe in one What and three Who's.
12. Do you believe Jesus Christ was physical bodily resurrected from the dead?

13. Do you believe you must be born-again to receive eternal life?

John 3:3–5 Jesus answered and said to him, **“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God.”** 4 Nicodemus *said to Him, “How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother’s womb and be born, can he?” 5 Jesus answered, **“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.**

2 Corinthians 5:17 Therefore if anyone is in Christ, *he is* a new creature; the old things passed away; behold, new things have come.

14. Do you believe Jesus Christ will return to gather His believers; in other words, do you believe in the Second Coming of Jesus Christ i.e. He is coming bodily to earth to judge and rule?

1 Thessalonians 4:13–18 But we do not want you to be uninformed, brethren, about those who are asleep, so that you will not grieve as do the rest who have no hope. 14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so God will bring with Him those who have fallen asleep in Jesus. 15 For this we say to you by the word of the Lord, that we who are alive and remain until the coming of the Lord, will not precede those who have fallen asleep. 16 For the Lord Himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of *the* archangel and with the trumpet of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. 17 Then we who are alive and remain will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so we shall always be with the Lord. 18 Therefore comfort one another with these words.

Hebrews 9:27–28 And inasmuch as it is appointed for men to die once and after this *comes* judgment, 28 so Christ also, having been offered once to bear the sins of many, will appear a second time for salvation without *reference to* sin, to those who eagerly await Him.

15. Do you believe you were a sinner before you accepted Jesus Christ as your personal Lord and Savior?

16. Do you believe salvation is only obtained by Jesus Christ’s sacrifice and not by your works.

Acts 20:28 “Be on guard for yourselves and for all the flock, among which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God which He purchased with His own blood.

Romans 3:25 whom God displayed publicly as a propitiation in His blood through faith. *This was* to demonstrate His righteousness, because in the forbearance of God He passed over the sins previously committed;

Romans 5:9 Much more then, having now been justified by His blood, we shall be saved from the wrath *of* God through Him.

Ephesians 1:7 In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace

Ephesians 2:8–9 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, *it is* the gift of God; 9 not as a result of works, so that no one may boast.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Hebrews 9:12-14 and not through the blood of goats and calves, but through His own blood, He entered the holy place once for all, having obtained eternal redemption. 13 For if the blood of goats and bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling those who have been defiled sanctify for the cleansing of the flesh, 14 how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without blemish to God, cleanse your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

17. Do you believe salvation is by grace alone through faith alone in Jesus Christ alone?

John 14:6 Jesus *said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me.

18. Have you accepted Jesus Christ as your Savior and your Lord?

Chapter 52: Cults And Religions

Cults often portray themselves as Christian, but when you evaluate their doctrines they are obviously non-Christian. It is no mistake that they portray themselves as Christian; it is a technique the enemy of your soul uses to deceive you. God's Word warns us about such people.

2 Timothy 3:5 holding to a **form of godliness**, although they have denied its power; Avoid such men as these.

The easiest way to evaluate if an organization's followers are saved or lost is to focus on their doctrine regarding Jesus of Nazareth. Concentrate on what the cult teaches regarding the deity of Jesus Christ. Any organization which denies that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh is a non-Christian organization. Any organization which teaches you need to do anything in addition to trusting only in the finished work of Jesus Christ on the cross for salvation is a non-Christian organization. Any organization that tries to add anything to Jesus Christ's finished work on the cross for salvation is a non-Christian organization. As well, you will learn if an organization is truly Christian or if it is instead a religion. Any organization that teaches you must keep a set of laws or rules to make yourself acceptable to God is a non-Christian religion. Please read or re-read the chapter titled *Christianity Is Not a Religion*.

Not to put too fine a point on it but, any organization that teaches Jesus was simply a good teacher is a non-Christian organization. Or if they teach, He was simply a prophet then it is a non-Christian organization. In fact, there is a specific warning in God's Word regarding the type of person or spirit who denies the deity of Christ:

1 John 4:2-3 By this you know the Spirit of God: **every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God; 3 and every spirit that does not confess Jesus is not from God; this is the spirit of the antichrist**, of which you have heard that it is coming, and now it is already in the world.

The phrase "Jesus Christ has come in the flesh" means Jesus Christ is God in human flesh. God warns us that anyone who does not confess that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh is the "**spirit of the antichrist**". Therefore, any organization which denies the deity of Jesus Christ is a non-Christian organization; in fact, it is the spirit of the antichrist. That is why I wrote an entire chapter titled *Jesus Christ Claimed to Be God*. God's Word clearly and repeatedly teaches that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh. If you are unsure about the deity of Jesus, then please read or re-read that chapter.

Chapter 53: What About Those Who Have Never Heard Of Jesus?

If Jesus is the only way to salvation, then what happens to those who have never heard of Jesus?

Romans 1:20 For since the creation of the world His invisible attributes, His eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly seen, being understood through what has been made, so that they are without excuse.

Colossians 1:15–20 He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. 16 **For by Him all things were created**, both in the heavens and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things have been created through Him and for Him. 17 He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together. 18 He is also head of the body, the church; and He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, so that He Himself will come to have first place in everything. 19 For it was the *Father's* good pleasure for all the fullness to dwell in Him, 20 and through Him to reconcile all things to Himself, having made peace through the blood of His cross; through Him, *I say*, whether things on earth or things in heaven.

Romans 15:21 a New Testament reference to Isaiah 52:15
21 but as it is written,
“They who had no news of Him shall see,
And they who have not heard shall understand.”

Isaiah 52:15
15 Thus He will sprinkle many nations,
Kings will shut their mouths on account of Him;
For what had not been told them they will see,
And what they had not heard they will understand.

If a person has never heard of Jesus Christ but they give up trying to worship false idols and give up trying to make themselves acceptable to God and if they turn away from their sin, repent of their sin, and simply turn to the God who made the universe and say “Help, whoever you are who created the universe, I believe in you God, I have faith in you” then they will be saved; because, Jesus Christ created the universe. If they worship the one true Creator, then they are worshipping Jesus Christ. If they have faith in the one true Creator of the universe then they are demonstrating faith in Jesus Christ; as a result, they are saved, God will give them eternal life. They will be saved the same way I was saved: by grace alone, through faith alone, in Jesus Christ alone.

Remember, you **are not responsible** for what others **do not know**; you **are responsible** for what you **do know**.

Chapter 54: Can A Christian Lose Their Salvation?

No.

Chapter 55: Why A Christian Cannot Lose Their Salvation

If a person believes a Christian can lose their salvation then that person does not know what salvation truly means. I believe the Bible teaches that if a person is a true born-again believer, then they cannot lose their salvation.

Please read this Bible passage carefully:

Ephesians 1:13–14 In Him, you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of your salvation—having also believed, **you were sealed in Him with the Holy Spirit of promise**, 14 who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of God's own possession, to the praise of His glory.

If a person can lose their salvation, then God must have lied when He said we were sealed in Him by the Holy Spirit.

If a person thinks they can lose their salvation if they do not keep the Ten Commandments, then they are not truly trusting in Jesus Christ alone for their salvation. They are trying to insert themselves in their own salvation. They do not truly believe Ephesians 2:8–9:

Ephesians 2:8–9 For by grace you have been saved through faith; and that not of yourselves, **it is the gift of God**; 9 **not as a result of works**, so that no one may boast.

Romans 11:29 for **the gifts** and the calling **of God are irrevocable**.

If a person can lose their salvation, then God would have to revoke His gift which is something which He says is **irrevocable**.

Romans 8:38–39 For I am convinced that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor things present, nor things to come, nor powers, 39 nor height, nor depth, **nor any other created thing, will be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.**

If a person can lose their salvation, then Romans 8:38–39 would have to be false.

Jude 24–25 Now to Him who is able to **keep you from stumbling, and to make you stand in the presence of His glory blameless** with great joy, 25 to the only God our Savior, through Jesus Christ our Lord, *be* glory, majesty, dominion and authority, before all time and now and forever. Amen.

If a person can lose their salvation, then Jude 24–25 would have to be false.

Here is a complete article written by R.C. Sproul called *Can a Christian Lose Their Salvation?* which addresses this question quite well.

Source: <https://www.ligonier.org/blog/can-christian-lose-their-salvation/>

We may live in a culture that believes everyone will be saved, that we are "justified by death" and all you need to do to go to heaven is die, but God's Word certainly doesn't give us the luxury of believing that. Any quick and honest reading of the New Testament shows that the Apostles were convinced that nobody can go to heaven unless they believe in Christ alone for their salvation (John 14:6; Romans 10:9–10). [Quoted earlier in the Chapter titled *How to Get into Heaven*]

Historically, evangelical Christians have largely agreed on this point. Where they have differed has been on the matter of the security of salvation. People who would otherwise agree that only those who trust in Jesus will be saved have disagreed on whether anyone who truly believes in Christ can lose his salvation.

Theologically speaking, what we are talking about here is the concept of *apostasy*. This term comes from a Greek word that means "to stand away from." When we talk about those who have become apostate or have committed apostasy, we're talking about those who have fallen from the faith or at least from the profession of faith in Christ that they once made.

Many believers have held that yes, true Christians can lose their salvation because there are several New Testament texts that seem to indicate that this can happen. I'm thinking, for example, of Paul's words in 1 Timothy 1:18–20:

1 Timothy 1:18–20 This command I entrust to you, Timothy, my son, in accordance with the prophecies previously made concerning you, that by them you fight the good fight, 19 keeping faith and a good conscience, which some have rejected and suffered shipwreck in regard to their faith. 20 Among these are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I have handed over to Satan, so that they will be taught not to blaspheme.

Here, during instructions and admonitions related to Timothy's life and ministry, Paul warns Timothy to keep the faith and to keep a good conscience, and to be reminded of those who didn't. The Apostle refers to those who made "shipwreck of their faith," men whom he "handed over to Satan that they may learn not to blaspheme." This second point is a reference to Paul's excommunication of these men, and the whole passage combines a sober warning with concrete examples of those who fell away grievously from their Christian profession.

There is no question that professing believers can fall and fall radically. We think of men like Peter, for example, who denied Christ. But the fact that he was restored shows that not every professing believer who falls has fallen past the point of no return. At this point, we should distinguish a serious and radical fall from a total and final fall. Reformed theologians have noted that the Bible is full of examples of true believers who fall into gross sin and even protracted periods of impenitence. So, Christians do fall, and they fall radically. What could be more serious than Peter's public denial of Jesus Christ?

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

But the question is, are these people who are guilty of a real fall irretrievably fallen and eternally lost, or is this fall a temporary condition that will, in the final analysis, be remedied by their restoration? In the case of a person such as Peter, we see that his fall was remedied by his repentance. However, what about those who fall away finally? Were they ever truly believers in the first place? The answer to the question must be no. 1 John 2:19 speaks of the false teachers who went out from the church as never having truly been part of the church. John describes the apostasy of people who had made a profession of faith but who never really were converted. Moreover, we know that God glorifies all whom He justifies (Romans 8:29–30). If a person has true saving faith and is justified, God will preserve that person.

1 John 2:19 They went out from us, **but they were not really of us**; for if they had been of us, they would have remained with us; but they went out, so that it would be shown that they all are not of us.

Romans 8:29–30 **For those whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, so that He would be the firstborn among many brethren; 30 and these whom He predestined, He also called; and these whom He called, He also justified; and these whom He justified, He also glorified.**

In the meantime, however, if the person who has fallen is still alive, how do we know if he is a full apostate? One thing none of us can do is read the heart of other people. When I see a person who has made a profession of faith and later repudiates it, I don't know whether he is a truly regenerate person who's in the midst of a serious, radical fall but who will at some point in the future certainly be restored; or whether he is a person who was never really converted, whose profession of faith was false from the start.

This question of whether a person can lose his salvation is not an abstract question. It touches us at the very core of our Christian lives, not only with regard to our concerns for our own perseverance, but also with regard to our concern for our family and friends, particularly those who seemed, for all outward appearances, to have made a genuine profession of faith. We thought their profession was credible, we embraced them as brothers or sisters, only to find out that they repudiated that faith.

What do you do, practically, in a situation like that? First, you pray, and then, you wait. We don't know the final outcome of the situation, and I'm sure there are going to be surprises when we get to heaven. We're going to be surprised to see people there who we didn't think would be, and we're going to be surprised that we don't see people there who we were sure would be there, because we simply don't know the internal status of a human heart or of a human soul. Only God can see that soul, change that soul, and preserve that soul.

End of quote written by R. C. Sproul

Protected by the power of God

1 Peter 1:1–9 Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, To those who reside as aliens, scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, who are chosen 2 according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, by the sanctifying work of the Spirit, to obey Jesus Christ and be sprinkled with His blood: May grace and peace be yours in the fullest measure. 3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who according to His great mercy has caused us to be born again to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4 to obtain an inheritance which is imperishable and undefiled and will not fade away, reserved in heaven for you, 5 who are **protected by the power of God** through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. 6 In this you greatly rejoice, even though now for a little while, if necessary, you have been distressed by various trials, 7 so that the proof of your faith, being more precious than gold which is perishable, even though tested by fire, may be found to result in praise and glory and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ; 8 and though you have not seen Him, you love Him, and though you do not see Him now, but believe in Him, you greatly rejoice with joy inexpressible and full of glory, 9 obtaining as the outcome of your faith the salvation of your souls.

If a person can lose their salvation, then 1 Peter 1:5 would have to be false.

I believe that, because of God's immutability and the permanent presence of the Holy Spirit in a born-again believer, all true believers in Jesus Christ, once saved, shall be saved forever, for all eternity.

John 3:16 "For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish, but have eternal life."

If a person can lose their salvation, then God must have lied when He said He gives us eternal life when we believe in Him; in other words, eternal life does not mean eternal life.

John 5:24 "Truly, truly, I say to you, he who hears My word, and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life, and does not come into judgment, but has passed out of death into life."

If a person can lose their salvation, then John 5:24 would have to be false.

John 10:28 and I give eternal life to them, and they will never perish; and no one will snatch them out of My hand.

If a person can lose their salvation, then John 10:28 would have to be false.

John 13:1 Now before the Feast of the Passover, Jesus knowing that His hour had come that He would depart out of this world to the Father, having loved His own who were in the world, He loved them to the end.

If a person can lose their salvation, then John 13:1 would have to be false.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

John 14:16–17 “I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Helper, that He may be with you forever; 17 *that is the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because it does not see Him or know Him, but you know Him because He abides with you and will be in you.*

If a person can lose their salvation, then John 14:16–17 would have to be false.

John 17:11 “I am no longer in the world; and yet they themselves are in the world, and I come to You. Holy Father, keep them in Your name, *the name which You have given Me, that they may be one even as We are.*

If a person can lose their salvation, then John 17:11 would have to be false.

Hebrews 7:25 Therefore **He is able also to save forever** those who draw near to God through Him, since He always lives to make intercession for them.

If a person can lose their salvation, then Hebrews 7:25 would have to be false.

1 John 5:13 These things I have written to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, so that you may know that **you have eternal life.**

If a person can lose their salvation, then 1 John 5:13 would have to be false.

2 Corinthians 5:1 For we know that if the earthly tent which is our house is torn down, **we have a building from God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.**

If a person can lose their salvation, then 2 Corinthians 5:1 would have to be false.

2 Corinthians 5:17 Therefore if anyone is in Christ, *he is a new creature*; the old things passed away; behold, new things have come.

If a person can lose their salvation, then God would have to destroy His new creation.

2 Corinthians 5:21 He made Him who knew no sin *to be sin on our behalf, so that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.*

Romans 5:17–19 For if by the transgression of the one, death reigned through the one, much more those who receive the abundance of grace and of **the gift of righteousness** will reign in life through the One, Jesus Christ. 18 So then as through one transgression there resulted condemnation to all men, even so through one act of righteousness there resulted justification of life to all men. 19 For as through the one man's disobedience the many were made sinners, even so through the obedience of the One **the many will be made righteous.**

If a person can lose their salvation, then God would have to take away His gift of righteousness.

2 Timothy 1:12 For this reason I also suffer these things, but I am not ashamed; for I know whom I have believed and I am convinced that He is able to guard what I have entrusted to Him until that day.

If a person can lose their salvation, then 2 Timothy 1:12 would have to be false.

1 Peter 1:18–19 knowing that you were not redeemed with perishable things like silver or gold from your futile way of life inherited from your forefathers, 19 but with precious blood, as of a lamb unblemished and spotless, the blood of Christ.

If a person can lose their salvation, then God would have to revoke His purchase of them, but He used the precious blood of Jesus Christ.

1 John 5:13 **These things I have written to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, so that you may know that you have eternal life.**

If a person can lose their salvation, then 1 John 5:13 would have to be false.

Predestined to glory not only salvation.

True born-again believers are predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son and we are also predestined for glory.

Romans 8:29–30 29 For those whom He foreknew, **He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son**, so that He would be the firstborn among many brethren; 30 and these whom He predestined, He also called; and these whom He called, He also justified; and these whom He justified, **He also glorified.**

Impossible to renew them again to repentance

Some people point to Hebrews 6:6 and say it means you can lose salvation. The problem with that interpretation is that the verse is talking about a person who has heard the gospel and that salvation is by grace and not by works and then that person returns to the Law for their justification. It is not talking about a true born-again believer who is trusting in the work of the Lord Jesus Christ for their salvation. It is **“Impossible to renew them again to repentance”** because they never repented in the first place; they never truly trusted in the work of Jesus Christ alone for their salvation, their eternal life. **They have fallen away from salvation by grace alone; they are returning to the Law to be justified.**

Hebrews 6:6 and then have fallen away, it is impossible to renew them again to repentance, since they again crucify to themselves the Son of God and put Him to open shame.

If a person believes they are a Christian and believe they can lose their salvation based on their actions, then they are trying to insert themselves into salvation. **I believe the Bible teaches that salvation is wholly the work of God - - the theological word for this is monergism.** I do not see how a person can read Romans 8:29–30, quoted above, and still believe they can insert themselves into the miracle of salvation. Perhaps they are not truly depending on grace alone through faith alone in Jesus Christ alone for their salvation? Perhaps they want to be able to do good works or never do any evil works after professing Christianity, to be able to be saved.

Chapter 56: Discipleship To Achieve The Great Commission

What kind of soil am I?

As you read Matthew 13:3-10; 18-23 please ask yourself the following two questions:

- 1.) What kind of soil am I? and,
- 2.) What kind of soil do I want to be?

Matthew 13:3–10 And He spoke many things to them in parables, saying, “Behold, the sower went out to sow; 4 and as he sowed, some *seeds* fell beside the road, and the birds came and ate them up. 5 “Others fell on the rocky places, where they did not have much soil; and immediately they sprang up, because they had no depth of soil. 6 “But when the sun had risen, they were scorched; and because they had no root, they withered away. 7 “Others fell among the thorns, and the thorns came up and choked them out. 8 “And others fell on the good soil and *yielded a crop, some a hundredfold, some sixty, and some thirty. 9 “He who has ears, let him hear.” 10 And the disciples came and said to Him, “Why do You speak to them in parables?”

Matthew 13:18–23 “Hear then the parable of the sower. 19 “When anyone hears the word of the kingdom and does not understand it, the evil *one* comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart. This is the one on whom seed was sown beside the road. 20 “The one on whom seed was sown on the rocky places, this is the man who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy; 21 yet he has no *firm* root in himself, but is *only* temporary, and when affliction or persecution arises because of the word, immediately he falls away. 22 “And the one on whom seed was sown among the thorns, this is the man who hears the word, and the worry of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful. 23 “And the one on whom seed was sown on the good soil, this is the man who hears the word and understands it; who indeed bears fruit and brings forth, some a hundredfold, some sixty, and some thirty.”

Only two things will go out into eternity: 1.) God and 2.) The souls of people. The extent to which you are involved with each is the extent to which you are involved with eternity. D.L. Moody said “*Only one life, t’will soon pass. Only what’s done for Christ will last*”.

Christ’s Example

What system did Jesus Christ put in place to spread the gospel to the world? He did not start a political party; He did not invent a magical product; He did not develop a series of programs to get people involved in a bunch of busy church work that keeps them from a deeper relationship with Him. Instead, He poured His love and truth into a small number of people, His disciples, and commissioned them to disciple more people.

Two verses frame the Lord Jesus Christ's life and example to us. The first recorded words of our Lord (Luke 2:49) and the last words he spoke at the moment of His death (John 19:30) give a strong message:

Luke 2:49 (KJV) ... **I must be about my Father's business**

John 19:30 Therefore when Jesus had received the sour wine, He said, **"It is finished!"**
And He bowed His head and gave up His spirit.

The Great Commission

Matthew 28:19–20 **"Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."**

Discipleship Defined

Generally, a disciple is someone who learns from others, especially someone who then in-turn teaches others what they have learned.

The Merriam-Webster Dictionary defines disciple as:

- 1: one who accepts and assists in spreading the doctrines of another: such as
- a. Christianity: one of the twelve in the inner circle of Christ's followers according to the Gospel accounts

Discipleship means to teach or train others with the goal of having them teach others.

Steps in God's Plan for Your Life

There are several steps in God's plan for every person's life:

1. Being Born-again
2. Walking in the Spirit (Understanding Law and Grace)
3. Sharing the gospel of Jesus Christ with other people
4. Discipleship
5. Defending the Faith (Apologetics)

NOTE: Apologetics does not mean apologizing for the Christian faith. Christian apologetics is the defense of Christianity against objections and answering questions regarding Christianity. The classic Bible verse regarding Christian apologetics is:

1 Peter 3:15 but sanctify Christ as Lord in your hearts, always being ready to make a defense to everyone who asks you to give an account for the hope that is in you, yet with gentleness and reverence;

Stay Focused

To help you stay focused on the great commission, keep an eternal perspective by renewing your mind with the following types of verses:

Colossians 3:1–2 Therefore if you have been raised up with Christ, keep seeking the things above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God. 2 Set your mind on the things above, not on the things that are on earth.

Matthew 6:19–24 “Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal. 20 “But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break in or steal; 21 for where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. 22 “The eye is the lamp of the body; so then if your eye is clear, your whole body will be full of light. 23 “But if your eye is bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If then the light that is in you is darkness, how great is the darkness! 24 “No one can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth.

Philippians 3:8 More than that, I count all things to be loss in view of the surpassing value of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and count them but rubbish so that I may gain Christ,

Luke 9:25 “For what is a man profited if he gains the whole world, and loses or forfeits himself?

Romans 12:1–2 Therefore I urge you, brethren, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies a living and holy sacrifice, acceptable to God, *which is* your spiritual service of worship. 2 And do not be conformed to this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, so that you may prove what the will of God is, that which is good and acceptable and perfect.

Galatians 2:20–21 “I have been crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the *life* which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 “I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness *comes* through the Law, then Christ died needlessly.”

John 20:21 So Jesus said to them again, “Peace *be* with you; as the Father has sent Me, I also send you.”

Many years ago, as a new Christian, I asked a mature Christian which books he recommends; I am very glad I asked Tom because he told me about *The Master Plan of Evangelism* by Robert E. Coleman <https://www.amazon.com/Master-Plan-Evangelism-Robert-Coleman/dp/0800788087/>

Robert Coleman’s book clearly explains Jesus Christ’s method to save as many people as possible; that book inspired me to write this book. The contents of this book were inspired by God the Holy Spirit.

Chapter 57: God Spoke To Me

To understand what God said to me, I need to give some background leading up to the words He said to me.

I considered myself to be an atheist from age 13 into my late 20s.

I was taking a philosophy course at university and the professor said, "The fact that you cannot see something is not proof that the thing does not exist." (By the way, that is not a double-negative). I remember thinking when the professor said that it was like my argument against the existence of God was crumbling. I began to think, maybe it was possible that God did exist. But almost the instant I thought that I thought that if God did exist then he must be a very unfair God because he sacrificed his Son on the cross - - at the time I did not understand that Jesus is God in human flesh. Nobody ever explained or made it clear to me that Jesus is God.

I started a small business because I wanted to make a lot of money. The business was faltering and as a result, I was going through a hard time, and I was under a great deal of stress; it was more stress than I had ever experienced. One day while I was sitting in my office, I prayed that if you are real, God, then I would rather know you than become wealthy. But, again, I thought that if God did exist then he must be a very unfair God because he sacrificed his Son on the cross; I still did not know that Jesus was God in human flesh. As the days, weeks, and months past, I found myself thinking more and more about God, but I just could not get past the idea that God must be a very unfair God.

One day I drove my dad to the airport, and I felt the need to buy a Bible. I bought two Bibles at the airport gift shop. I began reading the Bible and I also started listening to a variety of Bible teachers on Christian radio.

As I read through the Bible, I came to Genesis 6:5

Genesis 6:5 Then the Lord saw that the wickedness of man was great on the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.

It is hard to describe how convicted I felt when I read that verse. I said to myself "That is me, the verse is describing me." In effect, I admitted my sins. I know now that it was God the Holy Spirit convicting me of my sins. But, again, I immediately thought, how can I believe in such an unfair God who sacrificed his Son on the cross?

I continued to read through the Bible and listen to good teaching on Christian radio. As time passed, I felt more and more convicted of my sin; but at the same time, I felt trapped because I wanted to turn to God but could not; I was convinced he was infinitely unfair - - by sacrificing his Son on the cross. Jesus was a stumbling block to me, just as it says in the Bible:

1 Corinthians 1:23-24 23 but we preach Christ crucified, to Jews a stumbling block and to Gentiles foolishness, 24 but to those who are the called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

As each day went by, I tried not to think about my guilt but, I frequently thought about it. Then on New Year's Eve, I was driving home from my girlfriend's house; I was hit by a drunk driver on the freeway. At that moment I thought "I am mortal and if I died that night I would have gone straight to hell". Prior to that night, I wouldn't have thought that I could feel my guilt due to my sin any stronger; but, after that accident my guilt was magnified ten times.

Every day after that night I was frequently thinking "I need God, but he is unfair; how can I worship such an unfair God?" I was experiencing a form of mental distress which drove me to read the Bible more. I wanted some kind of solution but, I simply could not accept what I thought was such an unfair God. By this time, I had finished reading the entire Bible.

Then it happened: God spoke to me. Now, that is quite a claim. When I say God spoke to me, I need to explain what I mean. Many people have told me that God spoke to them and told them something; but when I ask such people for details about how He spoke to them they very quickly say they didn't mean "he spoke" to them; they usually explain that they only felt led to do something. When I ask them to explain the phrase "*felt led to do something*" they are at a loss for words; some will say that all they really mean is that they felt a "peace about their decision" to do something. So, they say God spoke to them but in fact, they didn't mean God spoke to them. But I am saying that God spoke to me. So, what do I mean when I say God spoke to me? I still remember exactly where I was when it happened. One morning I was walking through a hallway at home just thinking about what I was going to do that day. It was as though someone said something right behind me; so much so, that I turned to see who was there and I was the only one there. The voice was like my voice in my mind, but it was not my voice. I have never "heard voices" in my mind ever in my entire life, neither before nor after that event.

So, what did God say to me? He said only two words: "**I came**". God instantly corrected my erroneous thinking. As soon as I understood Jesus Christ is God in human flesh, I understood completely God's plan of salvation. I realized that He gave Himself to pay for my sins. Rather than being infinitely unfair, I realized God is infinitely gracious. I believe that was the moment I was born-again. God took away my heart of stone and He gave me a heart of flesh. My response to God was: "I believe, I believe everything" - by that I meant I believed His claim that **He came** and everything I read in His word, the Bible.

I know this wasn't me "solving" the dilemma I was in because what God did by dying on the cross was EXACTLY what no man would have come up with as a religion. All religions are simply a system where people think they can make themselves acceptable to God by doing good works; by doing more good works in their life than bad works. Christianity is not a religion; Christianity is a relationship with Jesus Christ. A true born-again believer trusts in only the work of Jesus Christ on the cross to pay for their sins; A true born-again believer does not trust in their own good works to make them acceptable to God.

When God spoke to me and said "I came" I instantly understood that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh; that is why whenever I explain the gospel of Jesus Christ to people, I always tell them the truth that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh.

One last thing I need to explain is the tone God used. He only spoke the two words: "I came". But and this is hard to explain, it was as though a strong feeling came with His words. It was the feeling you would get if your parent shook their head and said "No, no, no, you don't understand"; now, He did not say any of those words, it was merely a feeling that accompanied the two words He did say: "**I came**".

Chapter 58: Recommended Bible Study

Some of the best Bible study teachers I know of are:

- R.C. Sproul
- John Gerstner
- Bob George
- Dr. J. Vernon McGee
- Major W. Ian Thomas

I recommend you do an in-depth Bible study of the following books of the New Testament:

- Galatians
- Hebrews
- Romans
- John
- James

R.C. Sproul

Crucial Questions: 35 Free eBooks from R.C. Sproul

<https://www.ligonier.org/posts/rc-sprouls-crucial-questions-ebooks-now-free>

Also available on Kindle for FREE: Search on Kindle for: R.C. Sproul crucial questions kindle

<https://www.amazon.com/s?k=r.c.+sproul+crucial+questions+kindle&rh=n%3A133140011&encoding=UTF8&camp=1789&creative=390957&linkCode=ur2&rl=search-alias%3Ddigital-text&tag=thethrcou-20>

Foundations - by Dr. R. C. Sproul

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=D1J3LNvy5w8&list=PL3DiYQjbW-NO2C0mPYtVZ0DQRcM3LsHrr>

<https://www.youtube.com/c/ligonierministries/videos>

<https://www.ligonier.org/learn/series/understanding-the-gospel>

John Gerstner

<https://www.ligonier.org/search?query=John%20Gerstner>

<https://www.ligonier.org/learn/series/galatians-gerstner>

Bob George

Bob George Ministries provides a wealth of free Bible study material which may be obtained through

<http://BobGeorge.net>

<http://bobgeorge.net/blog/toc/>

Listen to the following MP3 files:

- Christ's Finished Work on The Cross which is available free online at:

<http://bobgeorge.net/christs-finished-work-on-the-cross/>

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Read and work through the excellent Bible study audio clips available free online at:

- Closer Look Bible Studies

<http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/closer-look/>

The Closer Look Bible Studies contains the following excellent topics:

- A Closer Look at The Finality of The Cross
- A Closer Look at the Reality of the Resurrection
- A Closer Look at Jesus Christ
- A Closer Look at the Word of God
- A Closer Look at the New Covenant
- A Closer Look at Law & Grace
- A Closer Look at Faith, Hope, and Love
- A Closer Look at Your Identity in Christ

The New Covenant

- Entering God's Rest
<http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/nc/entering-gods-rest/>
- Grace of God audio clip available free online at:
<http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/nc/>

Bob George has excellent individual studies of the following books:

- The Book of Galatians <http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/galatians/>
- The Book of Hebrews <http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/hebrews/>
- The Book of Romans <http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/romans/>
- The Book of John <http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/john/>
- The Book of James <http://bobgeorge.net/teaching/james/>

Dr. J. Vernon McGee, Thru the Bible program

Thru the Bible with Dr. J. Vernon McGee materials may be obtained through:

<http://www.ttb.org/>

Dr. McGee provides notes and outlines for all of the books of the Bible... FREE:

<https://ttb.org/docs/default-source/extra-materials/ttb-briefing-the-bible-digital-book.pdf>

Dr. McGee provides a wealth of free Bible study material; to start, I recommend that you listen all of his Sunday sermons; he has made his Sunday Sermons available online and as free MP3 files:

<https://www.ttb.org/resources/free-5-year-series-downloads>

Here are links to Dr. McGee's excellent individual studies:

(Listen to the whole book; these are simply links to the first chapter of each book)

- The Book of Galatians <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HSM5b6MpOXs>
- The Book of Hebrews <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ujjm5LFcvIA>
- The Book of Romans <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j54W0kzqzc4>
- The Book of John <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y0k14J5y3EA>
- The Book of James <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=17X5oWSzdXM>

I also recommend that you listen to as much of his five-year tour Thru The Bible as you are able.

Major W. Ian Thomas

Major W. Ian Thomas, teacher, and founder of the Torchbearers Bible schools. Materials may be obtained through <https://torchbearers.org/>

Chapter 59: Free Bible In Your Language

Faith Comes By Hearing - - free audio Bible in many languages.

<https://www.faithcomesbyhearing.com/audio-bible-resources/bible-is>

You can download many free Bible study resources from their site including an app.

Free Bible in many languages

<https://www.bible.com/languages>

Free Bible study software

<https://www.logos.com/basic>

Chapter 60: A Somber Warning

2 Timothy 3:5 holding to a **form of godliness**, although they have denied its power; Avoid such men as these.

Someone who has a form of godliness is someone who wants to appear to be a good person, appear to be “religious” but they deny the power of true godliness; they deny Jesus Christ. They deny that Jesus Christ is God in human flesh, or they deny that salvation is only possible through trusting in the finished work of Jesus Christ on the cross. But what about people who seem to believe in most if not all Christian doctrines? Could they be counterfeit Christians? Is it possible that someone can call Jesus Lord but in reality, only have a form of godliness? Well, yes, it is. Jesus said that it is in fact the case:

Matthew 7:15–23 “Beware of the false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves. **16** “You will know them by their fruits. Grapes are not gathered from thorn *bushes* nor figs from thistles, are they? **17** “So every good tree bears good fruit, but the bad tree bears bad fruit. **18** “A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit. **19** “Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. **20** “So then, you will know them by their fruits. **21** “Not everyone who says to Me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven *will enter*. **22** “Many will say to Me on that day, ‘Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in Your name, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name perform many miracles?’ **23** “And then I will declare to them, ‘I never knew you; DEPART FROM ME, YOU WHO PRACTICE LAWLESSNESS.’”

Parable of Ten Virgins

Jesus Christ taught a parable about ten virgins:

Matthew 25:1–13 “Then the kingdom of heaven will be comparable to ten virgins, who took their lamps and went out to meet the bridegroom. **2** “Five of them were foolish, and five were prudent. **3** “For when the foolish took their lamps, they took no oil with them, **4** but the prudent took oil in flasks along with their lamps. **5** “Now while the bridegroom was delaying, they all got drowsy and began to sleep. **6** “But at midnight there was a shout, ‘Behold, the bridegroom! Come out to meet him.’ **7** “Then all those virgins rose and trimmed their lamps. **8** “The foolish said to the prudent, ‘Give us some of your oil, for our lamps are going out.’ **9** “But the prudent answered, ‘No, there will not be enough for us and you too; go instead to the dealers and buy some for yourselves.’ **10** “And while they were going away to make the purchase, the bridegroom came, and those who were ready went in with him to the wedding feast; and the door was shut. **11** “Later the other virgins also came, saying, ‘Lord, lord, open up for us.’ **12** “But he answered, ‘Truly I say to you, I do not know you.’ **13** “Be on the alert then, for you do not know the day nor the hour.”

How can you tell a wise virgin from an unwise virgin? How can you tell a true Christian from a counterfeit Christian? Jesus told us in the first passage I quoted in this chapter in verses 20 and 21:

Matthew 7:20-21 "So then, you will know them by their fruits. 21 "Not everyone who says to Me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father who is in heaven will enter.

To determine if you are a wise or unwise virgin, you need to honestly look at your fruit. Jesus said, "you will know them by their fruits". What is the fruit of your life? Have you expanded the kingdom of Jesus Christ by witnessing the truth of the gospel to others? Have you supported Christian missionaries? Some people say, "Well, I may not tell them the gospel, but I try to let my life do the talking". But if you ask the people they have lived in front of, if they know that person is a Christian, then I bet most people would say they had no idea the person is a Christian. Faith comes by hearing. You need to tell people the gospel for them to believe. You cannot just let your life speak. You need to tell people the gospel:

Romans 10:17 So faith comes from hearing, and hearing by the word of Christ.

So, what is the somber warning? Don't play the hypocrite. Is there any hidden sin in your life? What is the fruit of your life? Are you doing the will of God the Father? Do you live the exchanged life? Are you letting Jesus Christ live through you every day?

Chapter 61: My Prayer For Your Life

I know what will determine how successful you will be at contributing to the fulfillment of the great commission; if you are controlled by the Spirit, you will fulfill God's will in your life. Therefore, my prayer for you is simple; it is the following Bible passage:

Ephesians 3:16–19 that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with power through His Spirit in the inner man, 17 so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith; *and* that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 may be able to comprehend with all the saints what is the breadth and length and height and depth, 19 **and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.**

Here are two thoughts to hopefully inspire you:

1. I will know when I have arrived in heaven because every thought I will have and every action I will perform will be in perfect accordance with God's will.
2. The will of God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit is my prayer, desire, and reward.

It is my sincere hope and prayer that this book will deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh. If you learn more about the love Jesus has for you then you will walk in the Spirit and when you do that you will be obedient; you will fulfill God's purpose for your life. You will be able to let Jesus Christ live through you to accomplish His good works through you; you will let Him disciple other people for Himself. If you do, then you will hear Him say to you: "Well done".

Matthew 25:21 "His master said to him, '**Well done**, good and faithful slave. You were faithful with a few things, I will put you in charge of many things; enter into the joy of your master.'

If you believe everything written in this book, then I will see you in heaven.

Chapter 62: Conclusion

To any atheists or agnostics who read this book I say: If because of reading this book you exercise your free will to repent of your sins and accept Jesus Christ as your personal Lord and Savior then I will see you in heaven and I will welcome you as my brother or sister in Jesus Christ. But, if after you read this book, you do not repent of your sins and make the choice to receive eternal life in Jesus Christ then your eternal punishment will be made more severe than had you never read this book. I shared the truth of the gospel of Jesus Christ with you because it is the will of God that you know about it.

2 Peter 3:9 The Lord is not slow about His promise, as some count slowness, but is patient toward you, not wishing for any to perish but for all to come to repentance.

It is only through this evil, fallen, world that we have the opportunity to exercise free will and accept the gift of salvation through Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh. It is only because God is infinite eternal love and justice that the opportunity to experience an eternal loving relationship with Him is made possible.

Everything mentioned in this book is supported by Bible verses; if it were not, then it would not have been included in this book.

God the Holy Spirit will teach you all truth as Jesus Christ, who is God in human flesh, said Himself:

John 14:26 "But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things, and bring to your remembrance all that I said to you.

It is impossible for me to say which Bible passage is my favorite because I have so many of them; but this is right near the top:

Galatians 2:20–21 "I have been crucified with Christ; and **it is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me; and the *life* which I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 "I do not nullify the grace of God, for if righteousness *comes* through the Law, then Christ died needlessly."**

If you are seeking a deeper relationship with Jesus Christ, then God will reward you. If you have read and applied the content of this book in your life, then I know the Lord God will bless you.

Hebrews 11:6 And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God must believe that He is and that **He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.**

I believe the Holy Spirit has made this content available to you because of your faithfulness to seek a deeper relationship with Him.

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

The subtitle of this book is *Discipleship for the Lord Jesus Christ*. You can be used by the Holy Spirit to disciple others for Jesus Christ. Once you have completed this book, my hope is that the Holy Spirit will inspire you to disciple other people for the Lord Jesus Christ using this content. You can help others deepen their relationship with Jesus Christ. You can contribute to the fulfillment of the great commission.

You can explain to others that Christianity is not a religion it is a relationship. In doing so, you can help the truth set people free and obtain eternal life.

God spoke to me and told me two words which changed my life for eternity. He said, "**I came**". As a result, I became a born-again Christian in a nano second; and I always emphasize the deity of Jesus Christ when witnessing to people. Jesus Christ is God in human flesh; each human being will be responsible for how they respond to that truth.

My prayer for your life, is the same prayer the apostle Paul prayed for his disciples:

Ephesians 3:16–19 that He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, to be strengthened with power through His Spirit in the inner man, 17 so that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith; and that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 may be able to comprehend with all the saints what is the breadth and length and height and depth, 19 and to know the love of Christ which surpasses knowledge, that you may be filled up to all the fullness of God.

This book shares biblical truth which will deepen your relationship with Jesus Christ. If you incorporate the biblical truth contained within this book into your life, then God the Holy Spirit will teach you even more truth.

Nothing would make me happier than to hear that you took this content and used it to lead people to salvation in the Lord Jesus Christ and to disciple them for the Lord Jesus Christ. If this book helped deepen your relationship with God, the Son and/or you do use this book to disciple others, then please let me know at 42Thru.com

Chapter 63: Copyrights

This is the first edition of this book. This book is Copyright © 2022 42Thru.com You are free to copy and distribute this book **provided it is for non-profit purposes**. Nothing would make me happier than to hear that you took the information in this book, copied it and used it to lead people to salvation in the Lord Jesus Christ and to disciple them for the Lord Jesus Christ. If this book helped deepen your relationship with God, the Son and/or you used this book to disciple others, then please let me know at 42Thru.com

Scripture references, unless otherwise noted, are taken from *The New American Standard Bible* (NASB). Scripture references are protected by © Copyright *The New American Standard Bible*. 1986 La Habra, CA: The Lockman Foundation

NOTE: Some devices may show some words in **maroon**; that was to show which words were spoken by Jesus Christ Himself.

John 14:6 Jesus *said to him, **"I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me.**

NOTE: Some verses may show a star (*) as shown in the verse above. Logos Bible software available at <https://www.logos.com/> has the following note to explain the use of the star (*) in some verses:

"A star (*) is used to mark verbs that are historically presents in the Greek which have been translated with an English past tense in order to conform to modern usage. The translators recognized that in some contexts the present tense seems more unexpected and unjustified to the English reader than a past tense would have been. But Greek authors frequently used the present tense for the sake of heightened vividness, thereby transporting their readers in imagination to the actual scene at the time of occurrence. However, the translators felt that it would be wise to change these historical presents to English past tenses."

Bob George materials are © Copyright Bob George and may be obtained through: <http://BobGeorge.net>

Thru the Bible with Dr. J. Vernon McGee materials are © Copyright Dr. J. Vernon McGee and may be obtained through <http://www.ttb.org/>

Glossary

The following definitions are taken from <https://www.merriam-webster.com/>

Abase

- to lower in rank, office, prestige, or esteem

Abhorrence

- a: the act or state of abhorring or despising something or someone
- b: a feeling of strong repugnance or disgust: LOATHING
an abhorrence of war

Abide

- a: to bear patiently: TOLERATE
cannot abide such bigots
- b: to endure without yielding: WITHSTAND
abide the onrush of the enemy

Abode

- the place where one lives: HOME

Abominable

- worthy of or causing disgust or hatred: DETESTABLE

Abomination

- something regarded with disgust or hatred: something abominable

Abyss

- an immeasurably deep gulf or great space

Admonition

- gentle or friendly reproof

Adultery

- voluntary sexual intercourse between a married person and someone other than that person's current spouse or partner

Advent

- the coming of Christ at the Incarnation

Advocate

- one who defends or maintains a cause or proposal

Agnostic

- a person who holds the view that any ultimate reality (such as God) is unknown and probably unknowable

Alienated

- feeling withdrawn or separated from others or from society as a whole

Almighty

- having absolute power over all

Amen

- used to express solemn ratification (as of an expression of faith) or hearty approval (as of an assertion)

Annihilated

- to cause to cease to exist: to do away with entirely so that nothing remains

Anoint

- 1: to smear or rub with oil or an oily substance
- 2 a: to apply oil to as part of a religious ceremony
- b: to choose by or as if by divine election

Antichrist

- one who denies or opposes Christ, specifically: a great antagonist expected to fill the world with wickedness but to be conquered forever by Christ at his second coming

Apologetics

- 1: systematic argumentative discourse (see DISCOURSE entry 1 sense 2a) in defense (as of a doctrine)
- 2: a branch of theology devoted to the defense of the divine origin and authority of Christianity

Apostasy

- 1: an act of refusing to continue to follow, obey, or recognize a religious faith
- 2: abandonment of a previous loyalty: DEFECTION

Apostle

- one sent on a mission: such as one of an authoritative New Testament group sent out to preach the gospel and made up especially of Christ's 12 original disciples and Paul

Archangel

- a chief angel

Assured / Assurance

- characterized by certainty or security: GUARANTEED

Atheist

- a person who does not believe in the existence of a god or any gods: one who subscribes to or advocates atheism

Atheism

- a: a lack of belief or a strong disbelief in the existence of a god or any gods
- b: a philosophical or religious position characterized by disbelief in the existence of a god or any gods

Atonement

- 1: reparation for an offense or injury: SATISFACTION
- 2: the reconciliation of God and humankind through the sacrificial death of Jesus Christ

Atone / Atoning

- to make amends: to provide or serve as reparation or compensation for something bad or unwelcome

Baptism

- a Christian sacrament marked by ritual use of water and admitting the recipient to the Christian community

Begotten

- brought into existence by or as if by a parent

Bestow

- to put to use: APPLY

Betrothed

- engaged to be married

Blaspheme / Blasphemy

- to speak in a way that shows irreverence for God or something sacred: to utter blasphemy

Brimstone

- sulfur

Cherub

- cherubim plural: an order of angels

Condemn

- to declare to be reprehensible, wrong, or evil usually after weighing evidence and without reservation

Confess

- to tell or make known (something, such as something wrong or damaging to oneself): ADMIT

Corrupt

- to change from good to bad in morals, manners, or actions

Covenant

- 1: a usually formal, solemn, and binding agreement
- 2: a written agreement or promise usually under seal between two or more parties especially for the performance of some action

Covet

- 1: to wish for earnestly
- 2: to desire (what belongs to another) inordinately or culpably

Crucify / Crucified

- to put to death by nailing or binding the wrists or hands and feet to a cross

Decree

- an order usually having the force of law

Defile

- a: to corrupt the purity or perfection of: DEBASE
- b: to violate the chastity or virginity of: DEFLOWER
- c: to make physically unclean especially with something unpleasant or contaminating

Deity

- 1a: the rank or essential nature of a god: DIVINITY
- b capitalized: GOD sense 1, SUPREME BEING
- 2: a god (see GOD entry 1 sense 2) or goddess
- 3: one exalted or revered as supremely good or powerful

Demon

- a: an evil spirit
- b: a source or agent of evil, harm, distress, or ruin

Dependent

- determined or conditioned by another

Disciple

- one who accepts and assists in spreading the doctrines of another: such as Christianity: one of the twelve in the inner circle of Christ's followers according to the Gospel accounts

Disobedience

- refusal or neglect to obey

Divine

- of, relating to, or proceeding directly from God

Doctrine

- a principle or position or the body of principles in a branch of knowledge or system of belief

A Deeper Relationship With Jesus

Enmity

- positive, active, and typically mutual hatred or ill will

Eternal

- having infinite duration: EVERLASTING

Evangelical

- of, relating to, or being in agreement with the Christian gospel especially as it is presented in the four Gospels

Evangelism

- the winning or revival of personal commitments to Christ

Faith

- belief and trust in and loyalty to God

Fallen

- to drop oneself to a lower position

Fellowship

- community of interest, activity, feeling, or experience

Forbearance

- a refraining from the enforcement of something (such as a debt, right, or obligation) that is due

Forbid

- to proscribe from or as if from the position of one in authority: command against

Fornication

- consensual sexual intercourse between two persons not married to each other

Forsake

- to renounce or turn away from entirely

Glory

- a: praise, honor, or distinction extended by common consent: RENOWN
- b: worshipful praise, honor, and thanksgiving

Godhead

- divine nature or essence
- the nature of God especially as existing in three persons

Grace

- a: unmerited divine assistance given to humans for their regeneration or sanctification
- b: a virtue coming from God
- c: a state of sanctification enjoyed through divine assistance

Heresy

- adherence to a religious opinion contrary to church dogma

Idiom

- an expression in the usage of a language that is peculiar to itself either in having a meaning that cannot be derived from the conjoined meanings of its elements (such as up in the air for "undecided")

Idol

- a representation or symbol of an object of worship
- broadly: a false god

Inerrant

- free from error

Infallible

1: incapable of error: UNERRING
2: not liable to mislead, deceive, or disappoint: CERTAIN
3: incapable of error in defining doctrines touching faith or morals

Iniquity

- gross injustice: WICKEDNESS

Inspired

- outstanding or brilliant in a way or to a degree suggestive of divine inspiration

Inspiration

- a divine influence or action on a person believed to qualify him or her to receive and communicate sacred revelation

Judgment

- the process of forming an opinion or evaluation by discerning and comparing

Justification

- the act or an instance of justifying something: VINDICATION
- to judge, regard, or treat as righteous and worthy of salvation

Lawless

- not restrained or controlled by law: UNRULY

Monergism

- the theological doctrine that regeneration is exclusively the work of the Holy Spirit

Netherworld

- the world of the dead

Offense

- something that outrages the moral or physical senses

Oracle

- a person through whom a deity is believed to speak

Ordinance

- an authoritative decree or direction: ORDER
- something ordained or decreed by fate or a deity

Predestined

- to destine, decree, determine, appoint, or settle beforehand

Predestinate

- to foreordain to an earthly or eternal lot or destiny by divine decree

Perish

- to become destroyed or ruined

Propitiation

- the act of gaining or regaining the favor or goodwill of someone or something: the act of propitiating: APPEASEMENT

Reconciled

- to restore to friendship or harmony

Redeem

- a: to buy back: REPURCHASE
- b: to get or win back

Regenerate

- 1: formed or created again
- 2: spiritually reborn or converted
- 3: restored to a better, higher, or more worthy state

Repent

- 1: to turn from sin and dedicate oneself to the amendment of one's life
- 2a: to feel regret or contrition
- b: to change one's mind

Resurrect

- to raise from the dead

Righteous

- acting in accord with divine or moral law: free from guilt or sin

Sabbath

- the seventh day of the week observed from Friday evening to Saturday evening as a day of rest and worship by Jews and some Christians

Salvation

- deliverance from the power and effects of sin

Sanctify

- 1: to set apart to a sacred purpose or to religious use: CONSECRATE
- 2: to free from sin: PURIFY

Seraphim

an order of angels

Sin

- transgression of the law of God

Romans 14:23

23 But he who doubts is condemned if he eats, because *his eating is* not from faith; and **whatever is not from faith is sin.**

Soul

- the immaterial essence, animating principle, or actuating cause of an individual life

Sovereignty

- freedom from external control: AUTONOMY

Transfiguration

- a: a change in form or appearance: METAMORPHOSIS
- b: an exalting, glorifying, or spiritual change

Transgression

- infringement or violation of a law, command, or duty

Trinity

- the unity of Father, Son, and Holy Spirit as three persons in one Godhead according to Christian dogma